VALENTINE AND ORSON,

The Two SONS of the

Emperour of Greece.

Newly Corrected and Amended; with New Pictures, Lively Expressing the

HISTORY.

LONDON, Printed by *J. W.* for *E. Tracy*, at the Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*, 1694.

A 372.345.7*

HARVARD COLLEGE
JAN 19 1912
LIBRARY

Hollis Fund

BRUNT 6 MAR 1912

THE PRINTER TO THE READER.

AMongſt many Hiſtories, as well *Ancient* as *Modern*, which have in Former Times borrowed our *Engliſh Phraſe* to ſpeak withal, this (Gentle Reader) here of *Valentine* and *Orſon*, Sons to the Emperour of *Greece*, now once again Newly Imprinted, craves a free paſſage of thy Acceptance, and puts it ſelf to the Cenſure of thoſe Hiſtoriographers, which make *Invention* the Eldeſt *Daughter* of the *Seven Sciences*. Therefore conſidering with my ſelf the worthineſs of the Story, with the Variety thereof; being many Years agoe firſt written in *French*, and ſince Tranſlated into *Engliſh*: where it hath found a favourable Welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours: I have now again to my Coſt and Charge, Publiſhed it to the Eye and Ear of ſuch, (to be ſeen or heard) as take plea-

ſure

ſure in theſe kind of Writings. It is furniſhed with much ſtate of matter, Elegancy and Invention, and Decked forth with many fair *Models* and Lively *Pictures*, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the Hiſtory, which I have cauſed to be newly Cut; not only to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a more Luſtre to *Heroick Atchievements* of *Knightly Adventures*: For here may the *Princely Mind* ſee his *Own Model*: the *Knightly Tilter* his *Martial Atchievements*: and the *Amorous Lady* her *Dulcet Paſſages of Love*: Here are *Countries*, with the *Courts of Kings deciphered*: the *Magnitude of Honours laid Open*: and the *True Form of Turnaments deſcribed*: and between *Knight* and *Knight* are here *moſt lively Combats Portrayed*; to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his *Time ill Spent*, or his *Labour Loſt*, where the Matter affords ſuch *Copiouſneſs of Pleaſure*. The *Hiſtory* for the *Strangeneſs*, may well bear the *Title* of Courtly *Contents*; for indeed it is a *Garden* of Courtly *delights*, wherein *Grow Flowers* of an *Extraordinary Savour*, that gives a *Scent* in the boſoms of *Nobility*, *Ladies*, *Knights*, and *Gentlewomen*. It gives alſo a *Working* to the *Minds* of the *Dull-Country-Swains*: and (as it were) leads them to ſearch out for *Martial Atchievements*, befitting many *Paſtimes*. Herein is alſo

ſo contained the True *difference* betwixt *Art* and *Nature*; for in *VALENTINE* is *Comprehended* the *Education of Art*; and in *ORSON* the *true working of Nature*; for being *both one Emperour's Sons*, the *One* of them *brought up* in a *Prince's* Palace, the *Other* among *Savage Beaſts*; Now makes the *Current* Paſs with more *Admiration* to the *Reader*: *Mark* but the *Carriage* of Wild *Orſon*, and you ſhall find *that Nature hath a Being above Art*, but yet *Nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working*. The *Hiſtory* here *Written* was *Tranſlated out of French* into *Engliſh*, above *a Hundred years agoe*, by one *Henry Watſon*, and ſince that time, it hath been by *him Corrected*, and put into a more *Pliant Style*, and ſo *followed on to the Preſs*, till this *preſent Edition*, which *I have* (*as you ſee*) here *Publiſhed* for thy Benefit: Therefore (*Gentle Reader*) accept of this my *coſt and pains*, who had rather prove a *Loſer*, than ſo *worthy* a *Story* as this is, ſhould lie in *Obſcurity*; for there are few *Subjects* of *humane carriage*, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be ſeen into. If you deſire to ſee the *cares* and *troubles* of *Kings*, here they are: If you deſire to know the *Battels* of *Martial* Champions, here they are: If of *Courtly Tournaments* and Combats of *Princes*, here they are: If of the *Travels* of *Knightly Adventures*, here they are: If of the *Sorrows* of *Diſtreſſed* Ladies, here they are; If of

ſtrange *Births*, and ſavage *Educations*, here they are: If of *Friends long loſt*, and of their *Joyful Meeting again*, here they are: If of *Charms* and *Enchantments* here they are: If of the *Reward* of *Traytors* and *Treaſons*, here they are: If of *long Captivities* and *Impriſonmenis*, here they are: Yea, here are all the *Varieties* and *Paſſages* that may furniſh forth a Hiſtory fit for a Readers pleaſure; for no unſeemly Words or Speeches are herein contained, but ſuch as are modeſtly carried.

Conſidering all which, I am now encouraged to put this Old Story into a new Livery, and not to ſuffer that to lie Buried, that a little Coſt may keep alive.

And ſo (Gentle Reader) craving thy kind Acceptance, I wiſh thee as much willingneſs to the Reading, as I have been forward in the Printing: And ſo I End.

FAREWEL.

THE

THE HISTORY OF Valentine and Orson.

CHAP. I.

How King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellisant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperour of Constantinople.

WE find it credibly set down in Antient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble and Valiant Pepin, some time a King of France, took to Wife one Bertha, who was descended of no less than Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wonderously cumbered with many adversities and troubles, enviously heap'd on every side: which with great Patience she always suffered.

The chief Instrument of all this Treacherous mischief towards this good Queen, was Plotted and effected by a False and Cursed Old Woman, who first of all brought her in Disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite Banished his Bed, while she in a Cunning manner brought in a Daughter of her own in the good Queen Bertha's stead. This Old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to Effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled Bertha) it so came to pass, that King Pepin had Two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, Haufrey and Henry, both which Sons so grieved the King, and so wasted the Country of France by their Outrages and Fury, that in the end they caused the Queen Bertha to be utterly banished, where she passed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, and abundance of sorrow. She long

endured thoſe miſerable days of ſorrow, at the laſt began to receive comfort again: For it ſo chanced after, at the earneſt ſuit & requeſt of divers great Peers and Lords of France, this good Queen began to find favour again with K. Pepin her Husband (who when he knew the Treachery that the wicked Old Woman had plotted againſt her) much bewailed the miſeries ſhe had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again moſt kindly. The Queen being thus reſtored to her former bed, in ſhort time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the puiſſant: But the King himſelf was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforeſaid Haufrey and Henry, and at the laſt compelled by them to forſake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the enſuing Hiſtory.

My purpoſe now at this preſent is, to ſet down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book; and eſpecially, the Valiant Acts and Deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orſon.

This K. Pepin had a Siſter named Belliſant, a Woman of great wit, beauty, and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which cauſed her brother Pepin's love mightily to appear to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced ſo, that the fame of this lovely perſonage ſpread it ſelf ſo abroad in other Regions, that at laſt K. Alexander, Emperor of Conſtantinople, who was much enflamed with her beauty, came into France, accompanied with a gallant troop of his nobility, all richly ſet out with all manner of Pomp belonging to ſo great a Perſonage.

This Emperour, ſhortly after his arrival, ſuddenly aſſembled all his Lords in their rich Habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepin's Court, to declare unto him the cauſe of his coming, which was to enjoy his fair Siſter Belliſant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto K. Pepin, declaring unto him the cauſe of their Emperours coming into his Country: which when K. Pepin underſtood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperors requeſt.

King Pepin underſtanding this ſudden (but joyful) News, made great preparations in his Court, for the entertaining of this noble Emperor: All things being in readineſs, K Pepin with all his noble train, went to meet Alexander Emperor of Conſtantinople: whom when they met, they entertained with great joy, & conducted him to the

Court

Court of France, where fair Beliſant was, and ſhe entertained him with no leſs joy, then her Brother K. Pepin had done before; and there they ſpent their time in great joy and triumphing.

This Marriage being once publickly known among all the Inhabitants, Joy began to ſhew forth it ſelf on every ſide, for ſuch a happy Day, wherein ſuch good Alliance was knit between the Emperor Alexander, and Pepin King of France: that Triumphs began in every place, againſt the Nuptial Day's appearance: When the time appointed came: theſe two were Eſpouſed in all Honour fitting for their Eſtates, and largeneſs ſhewed it ſelf on

every ſide. This marriage leaſt endured long, but at laſt being ended, the Emperor (aſſiſted with all his Worthy Train) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his brother in Law, and take their way towards Conſtantinople, with his fair Empreſs Beliſant. Being thus all mounted on Horſe-back, King Pepin alſo ſet forward with his Brother Emperor, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every ſide, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find Legs to go, found eyes to

weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Mistris, the new Empress of Constantinople.

At last, both these Mighty Princes came near unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears then words, the which I am not able to express: But above all, the Emperor yielded King Pepin worthy thanks for his quick, sudden and generous consent, in giving to him his fair Sister Bellisant, and with so frank and free a heart to yield him good will. At which words of the Emperor unto King Pepin, the King presently embraced him in his arms: saying, Fair Sir, and my right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your state required, nor with such Triumphs and Magnificence as became me, but in that you have so graciously accepted my small power, I hold my self content in that I have done, but not that I should have done: and therefore there belongeth small thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your wife: whereby (I trust) long friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witness of all that are here present, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raise in France, to adventure for your safety and succour all the days of my life.

King Pepin being now departed from the Emperor, turned himself to his Sister Bellisant, and in this manner takes his leave: Fair Sister (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of France, wherein you have spent your Infant days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions, Also let your behaviour be such, that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole company of all the Peers, may have honour and joy in you.

Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you, so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, and give no ear to wicked counsel, or to such as would move you to disloyalty: For you are the creature that I have always dearest loved in all the world; wherefore, if I should hear tydings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cause to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Waves: the young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt joy and fear, was not able to answer a word; and what with tears and sighs, the

passage

paſſage of her tongue was utterly ſtopt. Then all the Lords and Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was let fall many a hyniſh tear, as well on their parts of France, as they alſo that were to go for Conſtantinople, but eſpecially for the departure of the Fair Lady Belliſant.

All Duties of love being ended, K. Pepin returned into France and the Emperor by this time mounted upon the Seas, had wind and water at ſuch will & pleaſure, that within ſhort ſpace, he with all his Train arrived with ſafety at Conſtantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honour and Triumph, all which, here were needleſs to recount. But mark what hapned, not long after theſe joys & triumphs were clean extinguiſhed, that were made for the Lady Belliſant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations and tears were placed, and all for the ſaid poor Lady, which by Treaſon and falſe Accuſations, was caſt out and baniſhed, as hereafter more at large you ſhall perceive.

CHAP. II.

How the Arch-prieſt of Conſtantinople betrayed the Emperour, his Lord and Maſter, in making love to fair Belliſant the Empreſs, and what evil followed thereupon.

IN Conſtantinople lived an Arch-Prieſt, in whom the Emperor put ſuch Truſt, and loved ſo fervently, that he beſtowed upon him great Riches and Poſſeſſion, and committed all his Boſome thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the end made him ſole Governour and Commander over all his houſe; as alſo, he was the Emperor's Principal Conſellor, and one of his greateſt Favourites, for the which he afterwards had many a ſorrowful heart.

The Biſhop forgetting all the Emperor's favours, and great honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empreſs, which excelled all mortal Creatures, inordinate luſt prevailed with him ſo far, that there was nothing ſtood in his way, ſave only for time and opportunity to ſettle this his determination. At laſt it chanced on a day, that he eſpyed her all alone, ſitting ſolitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-prieſt well obſerving, he came into the chamber likewiſe, and ſat down by her: At laſt he began to beholo her with a ſmiling and jeſting countenance of all which, the Lady miſtruſted nothing, for that ſhe very well remembred

his

his greatnes with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the house, and she never so much as once dreaming or thinking such an evil thought, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, and so much affected him: But there is never more danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Soveraign Lady (qd. he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears, but rather let them wide open to hear my rude words, especially, for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair Person, and for whose love I have suffered intolerable torments in my fiery bosome. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my spirits, broken my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of all rest, both by night and day, and only with doting upon your peerles Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my meat, drink, manners, yea, and my very countenance; Insomuch, that only my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained unto. If Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these mynrestles thoughts (than which nothing will sooner cut my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present death and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful, be not then the cause that I should determine my life by losing your love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me forever yours in heartyaffection. But Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth and therefore it wholly rests in my power, to absolve you from your sins, and enjoyn your Penance: which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant me love.

These

Theſe ſpeeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent carriage, made unto this periur'd Prieſt, this excellent reprehenſion and anſwer. Ah, thou falſe, unjuſt, diſloyal, and Deviliſh Prieſt, ſtain to all thy profeſſion, How dareſt thou once open thy perjured mouth to ſuch a maſs of villanies, as thereon may enſue? Firſt, as I may ſay againſt the ſacred Order; Secondly, but moſt principally, againſt the Majeſty of that Emperor that ever nouriſhed thee in the bond of tender compaſſion and love, and hath raiſed thee to great Dignities, far unfit for ſuch a Devil incarnate: And from whom may juſtly proceed the ſentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he ſhould but underſtand thy laſcivious and wicked practices. Thou (I ſay) devil, and worſe than devil, thou that ſhouldſt be unto me inſtruction, and alſo a guide to my life and converſation, in this thou goeſt about my utter ruin and deſtruction, by thy evil conceptions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperor truſteth to be in thee; O never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am deſcended, nor the Emperor my loving Lord, ſhould be ſo diſhonored either by me in my body, or through my pride in any other manner: O falſe accurſed Man, behold whereunto thou wouldſt deliver me: Firſt, unto the utter ruin and ſpoil of mine honour; next, ſhut up my body in unremoveable ſhame for ever amongſt men; and laſtly bring my ſoul into the Jaws of death and the devil. Let fall, I ſay, all theſe thy vile and deviliſh provocations to luſt, and leave for ever hereafter to ſolicite me, or any other vertuous creature on this manner, which if thou further proſecute unto me, then canſt thou look for nothing but a ſhameful downfal, and a moſt damnable death. Therefore with this anſwer depart, and let that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewel of the worthy Empreſs, ſtung the Prieſt at the very heart, but at that time durſt make no further reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a man all compoſed of rage and great fury, he then departed, diſcontent at this his moſt unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the laſt, when he could no longer hold, he excuſed himſelf unto the Lady, craving pardon for theſe his bold, ſawcy and raſh follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to reſtore his honour. Thus being ſore troubled in mind divers & ſundry ways, he reſolved what to do upon revenge againſt this Innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treaſon againſt the Lady. And ſeeing the

Emperor

Emperor knew nothing in this matter from the Empress Bellisant, how the Arch Priest would have inticed her to dishonour, and would have drawn her to disloyalty to the Emperour, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperor for divers crimes, as hereafter more at large followeth to be spoken in the next ensuing Chapter.

CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of Bellisant, to save his own Honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.

The Arch-Priest having now begun to let abroach his Devilish Practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the Reputation of his former honours which the Emperor had bestowed upon him, whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great a care he had of his preservation, and so make known his loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his estate and person. So it befel, that on a day when he espyed a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperor all alone, he began to break with him on this manner, as followeth.

Right High and Mighty Emperor, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount & highly esteem of the many and innumerable Favours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: Wherefore as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other; Therefore it is my Duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person: wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to hide any thing from you: and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your person profit and honour. O Emperor, thus it is, Bellisant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord; for she wandreth in her

her lobe, giveth that unto another, which is proper only to your ſelf: To name the Perſon unto your Majeſty I will not, for you know I am a ſacred Prieſt, and may not ſeek the blood of any man: but yet know for certain, that by the way of confeſſion I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the name of him that thus uſurps your Bed: but let it ſuffice, there is not a more unclean & laſcivious woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed, and my duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My advice therefore is, to be wary of your Perſon, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wiſely, always with the preſervation of your honour. For will it not be a great ſhame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Siſter to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleneſs and wiſdom is not to be outſhined by any earthly Lady, and ſhe to prove a Whore? and what worſe is, one who daily deſireth your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long accuſation, little miſtruſted the treachery of this Arch-Prieſt, but gave Credit to all his fair, but falſe words, and therewithal became extream penſive and ſad: that his truſt in her beauteous Love, had been thus deceived. At laſt, having many days in many places uttered forth many diſcontented geſtures, words and ſighs, and many grievous acclamations, even in the Imperial Pallace, he gave reſt a while unto his diſcontented Paſſions: but wakened revenge to wait upon a fitter opportunity. And upon a day entering into the Chamber of his Fair Lady Belliſant, without ſpeaking any word to her at all, in a moſt fierce, rude and unmannerly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in ſuch a horrid manner; that the blood beſmear'd all her face in moſt inhumane ſort. The Lady receiving from her Lord ſuch unlookt for welcome, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as ſhe was able, began to ſay: Alas (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome out-rage? I call all the Gods to witneſs, I never did any thing in my life, either againſt your honour or life, or ever proſtituted my body to any ſtrangers lobe. The Emperor not being thus ſatisfied, Replyed, ſaying: Thou Whore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and curſed be the day and hour that ever

I saw thy deceivable Face, and therewithal, without all pity dashed her head against the ground, leaving her speechless, insomuch that all the Damsels, her attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful outcry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance; at which disaster all amazed, some ran to take up the dead Body of the Empress, others took upon them to speak unto the Emperor, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undeserved rage, whose words unto him were as followeth:

Alas (dread Soveraign) what may be the cause of this your sudden passion in delivering unto danger of death, this so modest, chast and noble a Lady? a Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of dishonour, neither towards you nor any in this Empire: Wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger against this harmless Lady. The Emperor nothing for all this relenting, answered, Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear how cunningly she hath deluded me: therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to death, and he or they who shall hereunto gainsay, I shall make him partaker in death with this wicked and disloyal Strumpet.

These words were no sooner uttered, but up rose a Worthy, Wise and Couragious bold Baron, and spake unto the Emperor after this manner, Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused Wife, Sister to a great King, namely Pepin K. of France, who when he shall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a couragious heart, and a brotherly affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, Houses, Wives and Children, forgetting Mercy, and only pursuing revenge upon us for these merciless and cruel deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and wound her on this manner wherein you have proceeded against her: The worthy Baron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperor, and in tears very submissively and lamentably thus she spake:

Alas (my Lord) take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil act, as I never so much as thought any evil against your

your perſon or dignity: at leaſt, my Lord, if your compaſſion be quite diſtinct from pitying me, yet pity the fruit of my Body, for I am great with Child by you, of which the Gods graut me a joyful deliverey. If nothing can appeaſe your anger towards me, then let my body be impriſon'd in ſome ſtrong Tower, till the time of my delivery, and then do with my body what pleaſeth you, ſo the fruit of my body may be kept ſafe. In this dolorous paſſion ſhe proceeded ſo far, that what with her ſighs and tears following one the other, it would have grieved the ſtoniſh heart that ever reſted in the boſome of the vileſt Tyrant that ever reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was ſo wholly bewitched with the falſe and Traiterous Acculation of the Arch-Prieſt, that all Lenity ſet a-part, he burſt out in this manner: Thou falſe Strumpet, the Child thou goeſt withal is to me no joy, but rather great diſhonour; for thy behaviour and thy diſloyalty hath made ſuch a ſeparation between us, that noting thy diſſolute life, thou haſt made another partner in my love. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the rage of the Emperor, by a common conſent removed her out of his preſence into another Chamber, ſhewing unto her all the labour they could, both in action and geſture, although her fair face was ſore deformed and beſmeared with blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were attendants, fetched water to waſh her face, and did all they could to revive her ever-dying ſpirits. Being thus in another Chamber, in comes Blandiman her 'Squire, who beholding her in this diſfigured manner, for very pity the water trickled down his cheeks, and at the laſt began his ſpeech in this manner:

Ah Madam, I plainly ſee that you are traiterouſly handled, and wiſh that the Gods would throw down their malignant Curſes upon that perſon that hath thus purchaſed your extream miſeries; but gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, and truſt me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again unto France, towards your Brother K. Pepin, who gave me and my ſervice unto you, to attend you in all theſe miſfortunes; all which I will to the utmoſt of my power undertake. Sweet Lady follow my counſel, and free your ſelf out of danger, for be you aſſured, that if here you ſtay, the Emperor will proſecute Revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a ſhameful Death.

Unto this the ſorrowful Lady made this Reply; Ah Blandiman, I know thy faithful ſervice towards me, but yet if I ſhould follow thy advice, and ſteal out of this Country ſecretly, it would argue me guilty of all that Infamy the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperor's Choler was ſomewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barons that attended, inſomuch that he cauſed Belliſant to be quickly brought before him: when ſhe was come, his heart trembled and fretted for very anger that he durſt not put her to death, fearing the puiſſance and might of her Brother K. Pepin, and therefore burſt forth into theſe ſpeeches: Thou falſe and accurſed Woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in Queſtion: I take the Gods to witneſs, were it not for thy Brother's ſake, the valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all fair Ladies, but for his ſake I ſpare thy life, ſtand forth and hear thy judgment, I baniſh thee out of my Country and Empire, expreſſly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou ſhalt ever be ſeen here any more, I aſſure thee thou ſhalt ſuffer death in all extremity: Alſo, I ſtraightly command that none of my Country dare be once ſo hardy as to give aid, or accompany you, ſave only your ſervant Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. Go, get thee preſently out of my ſight, for thou ſhalt never more ſleep in my boſome. The Emperor having pronounced ſentence againſt her, the Empreſs Belliſant, accompanied with her ſervant Blandiman, ſpeedily haſted to horſe. Being thus mounted, and then paſſing through the fair City towards one of the gates thereof, there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much lamenting the loſs of ſo fair a Lady, and ſo lovely an Empreſs. When ſhe came to the utmoſt part, even ready to go out of the gates of the City, there was heard ſuch a lamentable howling of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City of Conſtantinople. When ſhe was out of the walls of the City, and but newly entred into the wide fields; ſhe began to fall into a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to ſee how ſhamefully and diſhonourably ſhe was handled, cauſeleſs. Again, to think upon her birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence ſhe was fallen, as alſo to account the miſfor-

tune

tune wherein ſhe was like to finiſh the reſt of her dayes, it drave her at laſt from tears to utter her griefs in theſe words, Alas, in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall from ſo high eſtate to ſo low an Object of Poverty as I am now in: Woe is me the unhappieſt among Women, now are all my joys turn'd Topſie-Turvy, my laughter is turn'd into weeping, my Songs converted into ſighs: Inſtead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner of mean attire, my precious Stones of ineſtimable value are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears ſtand over all my garments. O you fields and woods, to you, I make my moan, for other company I have none, conſider my exile, and help to bewail my misfortune: O would the Gods had pitied my diſtreſs, and made me the pooreſt among Creatures, then had not Fortune given me ſo foul a fall, at leaſt, my poor Eſtate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beauteous Sun lend forth his beams on a wretch ſo miſerable? why doth the Earth bear ſuch a creature, that is compoſed of calamities? It is not poſſible for my Tongue to tell out my hearts ſorrow: O wretched man (whatſoever thou art) that by thy wicked treaſon hath brought me to this downfal, I may well curſe thee with bitterneſs of heart, for by thee only am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what ſhouldeſt thou do with ſuch a woful wight to thy Siſter: It had been better I had never been born, than that I ſhould prove ſuch a ſtain to thy Kingly Houſe. As ſhe was thus complaining to her ſecret heart, the anguiſh thereof ſtruck her into a ſwound as ſhe ſat on horſe-back, and was ready at that inſtant to have fallen off her horſe, e'er her ſervant could alight and recover her; but he uſed all the ſpeedieſt meanes for her recovery: at laſt ſhe coming unto her ſelf again, he ſaid unto her: Alas Madam, be not ſo diſcomforted, neither let deſpair ſo far ſeize upon you, but truſt ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and aſſiſt the innocent. Having thus ſpoken, he ſuddenly eſpyed a fountain, towards the which, he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he let her down thereby, to eaſe and refreſh her long over-tyred ſenſes. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Prieſt, who was the cauſe of all theſe treacherous and evil practiſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

How the Arch-Prieſt put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empreſs Belliſant, who was lately Baniſhed.

The Arch-Prieſt having now wrought the baniſhment of Fair Belliſant, thought with himſelf now he ſhould ſurely accompliſh his deſire: wherefore in all haſte he changed his white Rochet into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his ſide a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he ſuddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the faireſt that could be had in all Conſtantinople: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, enquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Belliſant was taken, who gladly told him which way ſhe lately paſſed. After ſome few hours riding, at laſt he came to a great ſpacious Foreſt and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, caſting his eye aſide, he preſently eſpied the Lady with her Servant Blandiman, ſitting by a Fountain, full of heavineſs, lamenting her miſerable Fortunes; Blandiman uſing all the means he could to Comfort her.

This falſe Prieſt from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reaſon of his diſguiſe, ſhe could not imagine him to be the Arch-Prieſt, her Enemy: but coming nearer her, ſhe ſoon diſcryed him, and being ſtruck with a ſudden fear, ſpake thus to her Servant: Alas, quoth ſhe) I well perceive this to be the falſe Arch-prieſt, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, leſt he be come to do me further Villany. Lady (quoth Blandiman) baniſh fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life laſteth: By this time that they had ended their Speech each to other, the Arch-prieſt was ready to alight from his horſe to ſalute the Lady in all courteous behaviour; and after he had made himſelf known unto her, he began to ſay unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late Honoured Empreſs, ſithence thy caſe is ſo pitiful, as to ſuffer Baniſhment by ſentence given againſt thee by the Emperor, ſo it is, That if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy Favour, and to grant what I have long ſought at thy hands, I will bring it to paſs that the Emperor ſhall again recall thy Baniſhment, and make thy greatneſs

greatneſs of State ſhine more bright then ever before. Therefore adviſe you well, for I Protеſt that I offer to you, is onely tending to your good and Advancement. Ha! (quoth the Lady) thou Diſloyal and Trayterous Adverſary, I have no great cauſe to beſtow Love, where my life hath bеn put in ſeopardy. It is onely thou that haſt wrought my overthrow, and thou it is, that makeſt me to ſpend the remnant of my days in more miſery then ever Lady is able to induce. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth ſuch Curſes againſt me, for I am come to you, not to ber or trouble you, but to heap upon you more joys than ever you as yet in all your life enjoyed: and in ſpeaking theſe words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have killed her; but Blandiman perceiving his intent, ſuddenly ſtarted between them, and gave the Arch-Prieſt ſo mighty a Stroak that he felled him to the Earth, and with the violence of the blow, broke out one of his Teeth: The Arch-Prieſt had no ſooner recovered himſelf from the ground, but ſuddenly betook him to his ſword, which Blandiman perceiving, betook him to a Glave which he had about him, whereupon grew a ſore and dangerous fight between them.

This encounter laſted ſo long that they were both wounded, but ſtill they continued fighting, till at laſt it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving afar off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, (quoth he) leave off and ſhew the cauſe of this your variance, and I ſhall do my beſt to end this controverſie, Sir, (qd. Blandiman) let us firſt try our right by our weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear ſilence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth ſhe) as you ever pityed woman, pity my caſe; for this Man whom here you ſee armed, is the falſe and Traiterous Arch-Prieſt, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unlatiable Luſt; Alſo this is he that hath made a ſeparation between me and the Emperor my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pityed her Miſery, and began thus unto the Arch-Prieſt: Sir Prieſt, leave off your enterprize, and dare not ſo much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperor did but underſtand this villany, he would ſoon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deſerveſt. As ſoon as the Arch-prieſt had heard his ſpeech, he forſook his combat, and fled as faſt as he could through

through the wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his purpose towards the Lady, though he conveyed his body out of sight, yet his Villanies were afterward disclosed. After his departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all sorrowful, with her wounded servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comforted her, saying, Alas Lady! I see that this Arch-Priest hath falsly betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Emperor, but I will promise you, that if I live I will bewray all these treacheries to the Emperor, and bring the Traitor to a shameful death, and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her horse, and himself on his, so riding on together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, during which time her servant was recovered of his wounds, and then set forward towards France, the Lady still sorrowful and complaining in this manner: Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother, and the Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable deed, and as a common Harlot, banished from the Emperor of Constantinople? Alas! I am persuaded that the King my brother will easily entertain it; that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger care not to deliver me over to death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it home upon the Offenders head. During the time of these discourses, they had passed many Countries and Regions, till at last they came into France, and passing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourn. So entring into a Forrest near unto Orleance; there hapned new Miseries unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

CHAP. V.

How Bellisant in her Banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine & Orson, & how she lost them.

BEllisant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forrest. The time of her delivery being come, caused

cauſed her to forſake her Horſe, and begin to complain to her ſervant on this manner. Alas (quoth ſhe) help, help, I ſay, to lay me down ſoftly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make haſte and find me the help of women, whereſoever thou canſt get any, for I can go no further, my pains ſo much increaſe in multitudes upon me.

Blandiman her ſervant did as ſhe commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the ſame place again, he let a ſpecial mark, that he might the readier come thither again: and ſo breaking him to Horſe, he rode forth ſwiftly to ſeek ſome Woman to help this diſtreſſed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortleſs all alone without

ſuccour of any creature, ſo that at laſt ſhe was delivered of two fair Sons in the Deſolate Forreſt. Theſe Children were no ſooner come into the World, but a freſh misery, worſe than all the reſt that ſhe

had endured, happened to this Lady, for as ſhe lay upon the earth under the træ, and her two Infants by her, ſuddenly came to her a huge Bear, moſt terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great pace haſted into the thickeſt of the Forreſt: This ſtrange and unlookt for Accident, frighted the diſtreſſed Lady to the ſoul, that ſhe cryed out moſt lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to haſten after the aforeſaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her ſight. But alas! it little availed her to make any further purſuit, for ſhe never came unto the ſight of the Child, till by miracle it was at length diſcloſed. So long wandred this Lady up and down from place to place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being over-wearied with travel, ſhe fell into a great ſickneſs, inſomuch that at the laſt ſhe was thereby near deprived of her life, and immediately fell into a ſwound upon the the cold earth, as if ſhe had yielded up the Ghoſt. In this Extaſie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which ſhe left under the Træ.

It hapned the ſame day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his Journey from Paris (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards Conſtantinople, to viſit his Siſter Belliſant, and ſtriking through Orleance, he made ſuch haſte, that he entred into the ſame Forreſt whereas his baniſhed Siſter was lately delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had hapned. Now as the King paſſed through this Forreſt, he eſpyed lying under a træ alone, the other Son of Belliſant, which when he ſaw, he ſaid unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, ſee I have here found a fair encounter, even a Child. By the Gods (ſaid the Lords) you ſay truth. Why, ſaid the King, take it up, and it ſhall be brought up at my charge ſo long as it liveth, and it ſhall want no manner of attendance, but be uſed as it were mine own. For if it lives untill it comes to mans eſtate, I will endow it with Lands and Poſſeſſions after the moſt nobleſt manner: and therewithal calling unto him one of the Squires, gave him the whole charge thereof, ſaying to him on this manner; Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, ſee it baptized, provide a good Nurſe for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto; the King little ſuſpecting that this Child was his Nephew.

The Eſquire as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, cauſed it tobe baptized, and gave it his own name, called

called Valentine. After, he ſought out a Nurſe for the Child, and gave it great attendance, according to the King's command. This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Conſtantinople, to ſee his lovely and beautious Siſter Belliſant, but e'er he could paſs through the Foreſt, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greateſt Extremity of Child Birth: Blandiman eſpying the King, knew him, and ſuddenly alighted from his Horſe, doing his duty unto him, the King perceiving it to be Blandiman, asked what good News from Conſtantinople, and above the reſt, how doth our Siſter Belliſant? Blandiman anſwered: Moſt Gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little tydings, yet thoſe I bring are bitter and ſharp: For (amongſt the reſt) I muſt tell you ſtrange News of your loving Siſter, and how ſhe fares: wherefore ſo it is, That by force of Treaſon, and falſe ſuggeſtion of the Curſed Arch-Prieſt of Conſtantinople, your Siſter is baniſhed out of the Emperor's Court and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperor's Court, and others, ſhe had been publickly put to death, and burnt to aſhes in the ſight of all the people,

King Pepin having heard the lamentable Relation of Blandiman's report, being exceeding outragious and fierce in anger (and yet ſorrowful withal) brake out in ſpeech moſt bitterly againſt her, on this manner: Now by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge in that he ſpared the life of my Siſter: for I ſwear, that if I had her here now in my poſſeſſion, I would not reſt, till by death I had made her an example to all falſe Ladies, while the world endureth: and therewithal commanded all his train of Lords, and others, to ſtay their journey of going forward, and make their return back again to Paris, for the grievous offences of my Siſter, here ſtays my journey, and ſo he departed, without further asking any more queſtions, but turning his horſes head, ſorrow overcame his courage, and at laſt made him break forth into theſe words: Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my purpoſes, for my only hope reſted in the Modeſty of my Siſter Belliſant, yea, and in her ſtood all my joys and pleaſure: Again, to have had the Emperor Alexander ſtill my Brother, and laſt friend at all aſſaies, and in all my neceſſities, was my only hope and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am diſappointed, defamed, and ſhut out into

Eternal diſhonor. And ſo in that diſtruſt and melancholly, K. Pepin returned again towards Orleance. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted; he durſt relate no further news of the Lady Belliſant, but leaving the King, took his way towards the Tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child birth: being come thither, he ſought her every where, but could hear no tydings of her: wherefore being ſorrowful, he knew not what way to take.

Being in this Extaſie, at laſt he tyed up his Horſe to a Thorn-tree, and began again to make a narrower ſearch than before; wherein he was ſo vigilant, that anon he eſpyed her, finding her flat upon the earth, in a manner ſpeechleſs for very grief of heart that ſhe had loſt her Child, which the Bear had violently borne away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at laſt he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his arms from the cold Earth, ſet her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas (dear Lady and Miſtreſs) how happened you to ſtray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghaſtly countenance, replyed thus, Ah Blandiman! my dolors and diſtreſſes daily increaſe upon me; for thou wert no ſooner departed to get me the help of ſome woman-kind, but I being delivered of two Babes, a ravenous Bear from the Forreſt aſſailed me, and bare away one of them, I, although weak, making what poor ſhift I was able, followed that Ravenous beaſt, thinking by ſtrong hand to have recovered again my loſs, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor, wanting my ſtrength, recover back again to the Tree; where I left my other Infant. Lady (qd. he) the other Infant? Why I my ſelf but lately came from the Tree, and I am well aſſured that there lay no Infant there, nor near thereabout. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree? With theſe words ſhe was ſo inwardly wounded, that ſhe fell down in a ſwound, which Blandiman eſpying, ſaved her (in what he could) and fell into bitter tears for grief and ſorrow, to ſee his Lady ſo extreamly plunged, and overwhelmed, and at laſt led her towards the Tree, where ſhe had left the Child, but when ſhe ſaw the other Child alſo gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured; in the midſt of all which ſorrows, ſhe thus beſpake.

Alas (quoth ſhe) can there be in the World a more deſolate wretch? an every ſide compaſſed with grief, yea, and all unſupportable Sorrows?

rows? But alas Emperor, thou art the cauſe, and haſt been the only meanes even to deliver me over even to death, and that wrongfully, without cauſe on my part, and only by deceivable counſel haſt thou bereft me of thy company; but here I call all the Gods to witneſs, that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor diſobedient unto thee in any point; wherefore once again I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the Offenders head, whoſoever. Firſt, for my Diſgrace; next, for my Baniſhment, and now laſtly for the loſs of my two Babes, iſſued from the Blood Royal of the Emperor of Conſtantinople: but ſeeing all theſe miſeries have even tyred themſelves upon my very heart, come Death, and finiſh what ſorrows do but prolong. All this while Blandiman was ear-witneſs of all theſe piteous plaints, inſomuch that he grew even weary of her wailings: in the beſt manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that ſhe would ſomewhat give over her moans, and betake her ſelf to her reſt: whereunto ſhe gave conſent, he accompanied with a woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nouriſhed her, till ſhe had ſomething recovered her ſtrength, and inſome meaſure forgotten the depth of her miſeries. Blandiman began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in loking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother King Pepin, who demanded of me what tydings? But his brows were bent, & full of anger againſt you; wherefore Lady, my counſel is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you ſhall have but ſlender welcome: for upon further queſtions demanded, and anſwered, ſo ſoon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you: O! (quoth the Lady) now what I moſt feared is come to paſs, and I well perceive that I am beſet with Adverſaries on every ſide: well, be it as it may be, the Emperor hath exiled me without cauſe, what then ſhall I do; I will never return again to Paris, but take my way into ſome remote Land, where my body with my faults ſhall be ſmothered: for my brothers anger is grown ſo great, that he could willingly deliver me over to death, therefore it is better to fly and to ſave my Life, then fall into the fury of ſo angry a Brother. This doleful ſpeech ſhe delivered in tears, which Blandiman perceiving, ſaid unto her: Lady leave off your tears, for be aſſured of my

faithful

faithful Fidelity, and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange adventure, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers; where now we shall be forced to leave them with sorrowful hearts and return again to speak something of the Bear, that carried away one of the Children.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady Bellisant's Children.

The Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no Violence, but bare it unto her Cave, which was dark and obscure: In this Cave, the Old Bear had Four Young Ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be Devoured, but mark

the Chance, and you shall find it at last Miraculous, for all this while the Young Bears did do it no harm, but with their Rough Paws stroaked it softly. The Old Bear perceiving they

they did not devour it, shewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it: insomuch that she kept it, and gave it suck among her young ones the space of one whole year. This Child by reason of the nourishment it received from the Bear, became rough all over like a beast, and as he grew in strength, began to range up and down in the woods, and when he met with other beasts would smite them, and got such Mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came, he was so extream fierce amongst them: and in this beast-like Estate passed he the term of fifteen years, growing up to such strength, that scarce any man or beast in the Forrest durst stir abroad, fearing to fall into his hands, lest he should put them to death, and after eat their flesh, more like unto a ravenous beast, then any humane Creature: His name was called Orſon, because a Bear had been his Nurse, and also was grown rough like a Bear.

This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were he never so hardy) durst abide his presence: the renown of this Wild-man grew so great, and spread so far abroad over all the Realm of France, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared Weapons nor Engines, but passed through them all, snapping them in pieces: All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of speech.

Here we leave the Wild-man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady Bellisant, and her Servant Blandiman; and we shall suddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety. But in the midst of her sorrowful wishes, yet she passed on her weary Journey, sometime by Sea, sometime by Land, till at length she came to a Port in Portugal, on the which did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Gyant called Ferragus, so great, and of such puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the living Trunk of this great Gyant.

It so happened at this Castle, that every Ship that passed by this Port was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which he himself did daily come aboard to receive. At length he came into the Ship wherein the Lady Bellisant and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all manner of rich Merchandize) so casting his eyes about, he espyed Bellisant,

Bellisant, which he kindly took by the hand, and lead her into the Castle to his wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady.) Blandiman followed his Lady also fearing the Gyant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but presented her to his wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Gyant having charged his wife to use her and Blandiman her Squire honourably. During her abode in the Castle she would often shed tears, when she bethought her of the loss of her two Children; which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her next her own person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took in her company. Within this Castle she tarried a long time, and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you somwhat of the Emperor of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.

CHAP. VII.

How by the Counsel of the Arch-Priest, new Customs, and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople, and how the Treason came to light.

ALexander the Emperor having shamefully expelled Bellisant his Wife, Sister to K. Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact: but by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-Priest, unto whose words the Emperor gave such Credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the Ears of the said Emperor: Insomuch that he continually heaped new Honours upon that Traiterous Priest, advancing him even above the highest in the Empire, and whatsoever he commanded was effected. At last, having gotten all Power and Authority in his hands, he began to enhance the Customs and Tares of the City of Constantinople, which exactions of his against all Reason, struck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the Residue of these his forced impositions, (it happened that according to their yearly Customs) there was held a great Mart in the City, which falls out about the month of September. Hereunto resorted many people for divers occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair or Mart day being come, the Emperor gave the charge thereof unto this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, and to the same purpose armed 200men to guard his own person: being thus accompanied

panied, he took his way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperor had ſo lately beſtowed upon him. It chanced ſo, that among the reſt of them that ſold wares, the Merchant was there preſent (of whom you have heard before) namely, the Merchant that came riding by the way whilſt Blandiman (the Diſtreſſed Lady Beliſants Eſquire) and the treacherous Arch-Prieſt was fighting: the Arch-Prieſt perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful leſt all his villany ſhould now come to light: The preſence of this Merchant much troubled the Arch-Prieſt, inſomuch as he wiſhed, (if it were poſſible) his Death, and would aſſuredly have effected the ſame by the Authority that he now had in his hands, but ſtill he feared ſome great Tumult would ariſe thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant, among the reſt, was richly furniſhed with all rich and coſtly Wares, as Cloth of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money then any five Merchants beſide: The Fair being ended, the Arch-Prieſt ſent forth his Officers to demand and receive his accuſtomed duties due upon the ſale of thoſe Merchandizes: One Officer came unto this Merchant and ſaid: Sir, you muſt pay Ten-pence on every pound that you have taken, for ſo it is Ordained by the great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Merchant hereat being angry, ſaid, Curſed be that Diſloyal Arch-Prieſt, for he is the only cauſe of theſe new railed exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long ſince had his Deſert, and with ſhame and infamy had ended his Days: At which reproachful words againſt the Arch-Prieſt, the Officer took his ſtaff and ſmote the Merchant on the head, that preſently the blood guſhed out Then the Merchant feeling the blood about his ears, drew his Sword, and ſtruck ſo hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this aroſe a great Rout throughout the Fair, inſomuch that the reſt of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the Arch-Prieſt: The Arch-Prieſt glad of this opportunity, would ſuddenly have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Juſtice, to have his cauſe tryed by the Law. The Arch-Prieſt fearing the People, ſent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could ſatisfie him but his life: But mark, in ſeeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchaſed his own Death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Prieſt cauſed the Merchant to be brought into the Emperors Pallace; whereas he in perſon ſat as Judge. The Emperor

being set, the Arch-Priest brought his Advocate to Plead his Cause which was to this effect, That the Merchant had committed Murther, and also had spoken many opprobrious words against the said Arch-Priest: The Advocate having ended his Accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperor, and said, Mighty and most Excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but Audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great importance, that it touches your Person even in the highest Degree of Treason. Say on, said the Emperor; Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Pallace, that none depart from this place: The Emperor did as he requested; Then said the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the the honour of the Emperor and the Triumphant reign of his Person, attend my words; For the time is come that the Treason of the Cursed Arch-Priest will now be revealed and come to Light. Then thus great Emperor, this that is cursed Man whom you have ever Nourished, and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your trust, for he it is that hath wrought all the Discord, betwixt you and your Vertuous Lady, whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more Dishonour than ever he reaped Honour from you; For it had been his part most of any to have nourished and advanced your Renown, and to have preserved your honour, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by these his wicked Projects, and brought upon you great scandal among all Nations; for he secretly and under-hand made Love to your Empress, but she denyed him; the which he perceiving, that there was no likelyhood to accomplish his Desire, it drove him into a thousand Fears, least this his Disloyal Act should come to light, and therefore devised to falsifie unto your Ears, her faithful love unto your Bed: Of all which his false accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he lyeth like a Traytor, and for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these Eyes of mine were witnesses.

It so happened on a Day (after the Banishment of the Empress Beliisant) as I was riding about my Affairs, I chanced to travel through a Wood: at last passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priest-hood into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the Combate; with

with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in fight with another Man unarmed, which at laſt I found to be Blandiman, Squire to the baniſhed Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile.

I perceiving they encountred one another ſo fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight; but they little regarded what I ſaid: I did perceive the Lady pitifully weeping, and at laſt ſaid unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid againſt this treacherous Arch-Prieſt, that ſeeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is he, and only he, by whom I am baniſhed from my Emperor's Bed and Country. With that I put ſpurs to my horſe, and ran between them to ſeparate them; which this Arch-Prieſt perceiving, ſuddenly fled into the Wood, being fully aſſured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but, I durſt not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatneſs would have outſwayed my truth, and ſo have brought my ſelf unto an untimely death.

The Emperor having heard this tale, ſighed, and at laſt fell into tears, in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-prieſt, relating his diſloyalty in this manner: Ah thou falſe ſervant (quoth he) have I ever ſtudied to do thee honour, and exalt thee to high dignities, and haſt thou requited all my love and truſt with diſloyalty and treaſons? well, I have ſeen now what I ever miſtruſted, thou haſt made me of all men moſt unhappy; but it is not ſo much thy fault as my own, thy treaſon hath bewitched me: in an evil hour I gave credit to thy falſe ſpeaking Tongue, and thereby deſerve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The Arch-Prieſt hearing the Emperor thus diſtempered, began to intreat his Highneſs not to be ſo impatient, neither to give credit to his ſlanderous Tale that the Merchant had commenced againſt him: for (quoth he) he belieth me, and I am no way guilty of that wherewith he accuſeth me: Thou lyeſt falſly (quoth the Merchant) thou canſt not excuſe thy ſelf in what I have charged thee withal: and if thou ſtand ſtill in the denyal, I challenge thee by the ſingle Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrel: and hereupon I throw down my Gage, and withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here ſpoken: and more than that, ere night ſhut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yield my ſelf vanquiſhed.

The Emperor ſeeing the Merchant ſo reſolute, and to ſtand to the

tryal of the combate, he ſaid: Arch-Prieſt, it is time that either thou quit thy ſelf by anſwering this challenge, or to yield thy ſelf guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The Arch-Prieſt replyed on this manner: Mighty Emperor, I muſt let you underſtand, that to anſwer the Merchants Challeng, or take up Arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a ſacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuſe to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperor) in this caſe no excuſe is to be admitted, but you muſt either fight, or yield your ſelf a Traytor to our Crown and Dignity. At theſe words the Arch-Prieſt was ſomewhat troubled in mind, yet at laſt he was fain to accept the Combate, becauſe the Emperor charged him ſo deeply: and beſides, he could have no excuſe admitted. So the Emperor commanded them both to ſafe-keeping, till ſuch time he had ſent Letters to King Pepin of France; but in concluſion the Traytor had his deſert, as hereafter followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Emperor by the Counſel of his Nobility, ſent for King Pepin, to ſee the Combate fought between the Arch-Prieſt and the Merchant.

The day of the Combate being appointed and the field prepared, tydings came to the Emperor, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope againſt the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the grave counſel of the Lords, diſpatched Ambaſſadors thither, with command to bring K. Pepin to Conſtantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witneſs of theſe contentions, and of the cauſe of this combate, which was to prove the Arch-Prieſt a Traytor and alſo to hold the Emperor excuſed in that he hadby his falſe accuſations baniſhed his Empreſs. The Ambaſſadors thus diſpatched, you muſt imagine, that after long travel, at laſt they came to Rome, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them: King Pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their ſeveral degrees; all which being done, the Ambaſſadors thus ſpake unto King Pepin, Great Lord, we preſent theſe Letters from Alexander your Brother, Emperor of Conſtantinople, our Lord and Maſter, of which we intreat a ſpeedy Anſwer. King Pepin took the Letters graciouſly, and read them: And having throughly conſidered the Contents, with a loud voice, he ſaid: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tydings, and alſo of as great admiration, The Emperor Alexander

greets

greets me well, and ſends me word that my Siſter Belliſant his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully Baniſhed, and that by reaſon of a Falſe Arch-Prieſt unto whom he hath given too much truſt: which Prieſt for theſe his treaſonable Facts, is accuſed by a Merchant, and for tryal of the truth of this his accuſation, will put himſelf in jeopardy of life, by ſingle combate in open field, body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Prieſt. Now it is ſo fallen out, that the Day and place is ready for the tryal of his fact, whereby I ſhall be fully ſatisfied whether my Siſter hath been guilty of that wherewith ſhe hath been charged, and moſt ſhamefully caſt forth into baniſhment: upon all which I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this indignity, without juſt cauſe, that I will be avenged againſt him in the extreameſt manner that war can thunder forth againſt him. Having ended his ſpeech unto his Lords in Preſence of the Ambaſſadours, he commanded with ſpeed that every man ſhould addreſs himſelf to accompany him to Conſtantinople, to behold the manner of this Fight between the Merchant and the Arch-Prieſt.

The Day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way towards Conſtantinople, where after ſome few days of travel, he ſafely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made Triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach: The Emperor mounted on horſe-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother King Pepin. At laſt they met: but the Emperor overcome with Sorrow and Tears at the remembrance of Belliſant, could not utter a word. On the other ſide, Pepin being fiercely angred at what happened to his Siſter, gave no reſpect unto the Emperors tears, but proudly began to gird him on this manner: Emperor (quoth he) leave off theſe your lamentations, and ſhake off theſe weeds of ſorrow that you ſeem to wear for my Siſter Belliſant! for he that hath a Harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her miſbehaviour, and ſince my Siſter hath proved ſuch a one; let her go and take care of her ſelf, ſhe is not worthy of ſo much as one tear from ſuch an Eye of Majeſty.

Nay, nay, ſaid the Emperor, ſpeak not evilly againſt your Siſter, for I am now fully perſwaded, that ſhe is compoſed of all vertue and true honeſty, and that againſt all equity, I have baniſhed her out of my Country. Think you ſo now? quoth K. Pepin) then are you worthy of a double ſhame, and you do bewray unto the world your weakneſs, and

what

what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traytor too, you would with such rigor proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame, and dishonour, being of the Blood Royal of France. The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this manner; Alas, my Lord do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon some milder saying, for to that intent have I sent for you that your own eyes may be a witness of the truth. 'Tis true (quoth King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you say, for you have delivered over my Sister into the Worlds infamy, and that more is, even to banishment; and (for ought I know) to death it self, for I know not whether ever I shall behold her face again, or not: Fie; fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden judgement against an innocent; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed of the honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation and next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister? I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the only cause of these false and unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entred Constantinople, where with great joy and gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperor would have had King Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denyed, and caused his Train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully refused them: for King Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonor done unto his Sister, and that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the fairest, the most vertuous, and the chastest Lady in all the world, and that by Injustice and Treason she was banished.

CHAP. IX.

How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady Bellisant, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant.

Now

NOw was the day appointed come for the Combate betwæn the Arch-Prieſt and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readineſs, according to the Commaund of the Emperor. At laſt there came both the Combatants into the field, and preſented themſelves before the Emperor. Being both before the Emperor; his Attendants (Knights and others) and the Arch-Prieſt armed in a moſt ſumptuous Armour of proof, all imboſt with Gold and Pearl, which made ſuch a glittering ſhew, that it even dazled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Prieſt came forth into the Field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the Liſt, appointed for that purpoſe: The Emperor beholding the Glorious ſhew that the Arch-Prieſt made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, cauſing him firſt to knæl down and in the preſence of the Aſſembly, dubbed him Knight. Then commanded he that a moſt rich armor ſhould be put upon him in the preſence of King Pepin, who during the time he was arming, promiſing unto this Merchant, if he obercame the Arch-Prieſt, to advance him to great livings, and high authority. Theſe two Adverſaries being now in readineſs, and each having their Blazon about their necks, their horſes were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battel: The Emperor gave ſtrict charge unto all his Officers of arms to have a ſpecial eye unto the Arch-Prieſt, for fear leſt he on the ſudden ſhould flye the field, or run away from them, as they would anſwer it with their lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his ſword girt to him: firſt entred the Liſts, after whom entred ſuch abundance of people, that they were numberleſs. Then after came the Arch-Prieſt, ſumptuouſly accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Liſts, ready to charge one another; King Pepin being there in perſon, called out aloud unto the Merchant, ſaying unto him: My Friend, the Gods give thee victory againſt this falſe traitor: I vow unto thee here before this Aſſembly (ſo I may but find out the truth of my Siſter Belliſant) notwithſtanding the great advancement that the Emperor hath promiſed, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the beſt of my Kingdom; the Merchant gave the King great thanks, and ſaid; Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this Trayterous Prieſt confeſs that he hath treacherouſly ſought the Deſtruction of your Siſter: then came a Herauld, adminiſtring to them both an Oath, and ſo clearing the Liſts, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such violence together, that their Spears were broken to their hands; then they began to set forward to another Course, charging each other with their Swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they redounded from their Armour to the ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Coullets, and left them as a Prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priest seeing himself so stiffly matched, gave over the Fight till towards the Evening, for such was the custom of the Country, that in any challenged combate either party might refuse to follow the Fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing-time, so the Combatant were yielded vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the sen-

tence of death, thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant; which the Merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the Arch-Priest couragiously when he encountred him; which not being long after, the merchant so redoubled his stroaks, that he smote off one of his ears, and his steel Habergeon,

Habergion, and with the violence of the ſame blow, the Merchants ſword fell from his hand; which the Arch-Biſhop ſeing, put ſpurs to his horſe, and charged him with ſuch violence, that he ran againſt the Merchants horſe, and thruſt out one of his eyes: the horſe feeling himſelf hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curbetting ſo furiouſly that he unhors'd his rider: and ſo hard was the fortune of the Merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung in the ſtirrop, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horſe hurrying him along the field, that all were very ſorrowful to behold this lamentable ſpectacle, and with the amazement thereof grew deſperate in their hopes. King Pepin alſo was ſo diſcouraged at this diſaſterous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his cheeks, uttering many ſilent ejaculations againſt the unkindneſs of fortune.

Now that which was moſt miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Biſhop could not inforce his horſe to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out to and fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merchant as he thought to have done. But ſee, at the laſt the Merchants horſe ſounded and fell down, by which means the Merchant got his Leg from forth the ſtirrop, and at laſt got up on his feet like a valiant and hardy Champion: the Arch-Biſhop perceiving the Merchant had recovered his legs; came running with ſtrong violence upon him, and thereby lent him five or ſix blows upon his head and ſhoulders, that the poor Merchant was even aſtonied. At laſt he was forced to give back to recover breath, and in a very little ſpace finding himſelf ſomewhat relieved, he ſubtilely, and fiercely gave a freſh aſſault upon the Arch-Biſhop, againſt whom he ſtruck with ſuch violence, that the ſword fell out of his hand, but he had firſt ſo wounded the Arch-Biſhop, that the blood ran through his Armour upon the earth. This ſo vexed the Arch-Biſhop, that he grew mad with rage, and turned his horſe upon the Merchant, minding to have over-run him with his horſe. But the Merchant obſerving his drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long knife, punch'd it into the belly of the horſe, ſo that the horſe being thus wounded, began to fling and leap; inſomuch as the Arch-Biſhop was in danger to be unhorſt, and ſtriving to ſave himſelf, he loſt his ſhield. The Merchant eſpying him thus unarmed, ran haſtily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, ſo that he could no more recover it, that done, he made again towards his horſe, and ſmote him into the belly with his ſword, ſo that both the horſe and his rider came tumbling on the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorst, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground and leaping on him, pull'd off his helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head: The Arch-Priest seeing himself in such danger, said thus, Alas, my friend, I pray thee take pity on me, and give me leave to confess my self, for I yield my self vanquish'd. The Merchant hereat was very courteous, and granted him his desire: The Priest had no sooner got on his feet, but clasping the Merchant in his arms threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant: I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ha! replyed the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me: Well, it is so that now I stand at thy mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee, therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life, I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperor and King Pepin, and there openly, in the hearing of all men, testifie that thou falsly hast accused me, and that thereby I may be cleared of those false accusations which by thy means have been brought upon me, all which if thou effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life, and besides, be a means unto the Emperor and his Brother, to buy thee Peace and forgiveness of this thy foul fact committed both against me and them also: May more, I swear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the Order of Priest-hood, to give thee a Neece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of pleasant behaviour; and to conclude, thou shalt say more than ever any of thy kindred ever told, thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely death? The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the sudden exceeding sorrowful, and not without cause, but not knowing on the sudden what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be as mindful of your Oaths and Promises. In me, quoth the Arch-Priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards towards the Emperor, and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-Priest, wherefore rise up then, and let

us

us go together: the Merchant had no ſooner got on his feet, but he began again afreſh to open all the treaſon of the Arch-Prieſt, even to his Teeth, and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the ſame ſawce he had ſerved him before, and ſuddenly he claſping the Arch-Prieſt in his arms, he threw him down, and having him at advantage, he ſaid thus, Arch-Prieſt ſeeing you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confeſſions; for you ſhall confeſs to me or none. The Arch-Prieſt ſeeing himſelf beaten at his own weapons, began again to intreat, but the Merchant not regarding his words, preſently put out his eyes, and gave him ſo many deadly blows, that he made him ſure enough for riſing to do him any harm: then the Merchant called the Marſhals of the field, and ſaid; Lo, here you may ſee that I have done my beſt endeavour againſt the Arch-Prieſt, and if he be vanquiſhed, ſay ſo, for I am ſure I have brought him to ſuch a paſs, that I may kill him outright if I pleaſe; therefore my requeſt now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander, Emperor of Conſtantinople, and King Pepin of France, hither to this place, accompanyed with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be ear-witneſſes of the confeſſion which the Arch-Prieſt ſhall make unto them, and alſo to hear in what unjuſt manner he waged Combat againſt me,

The Marſhals did according to the requeſt of the Merchant, and then preſently came Alexander the Emperor, with King Pepin, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Prieſt lay, all ſorrowful and fully vanquiſhed. Then the Emperor demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Prieſt confeſſed, declaring the whole plot of his villanies, and how by his means the Lady Belliſant had been wrongfully baniſhed. When the ſtanders by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were ſhed on every ſide, but eſpecially the Emperor, for his lamentations were ſo violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterneſs and hearty ſorrow: Now if the Emperor were ſo ſorrowful what may you think of King Pepin her Brother? Alas, it was not without great cauſe, when they ſaw and knew that by too much truſt given to a treacherous Prieſt, they had loſt the vertuous Lady Belliſant. Between theſe two great Princes there was great joy and great ſorrow; joy to King Pepin that his Siſter was found innocent and blameleſs; ſorrow to the Emperor, that he ſhould be the only means (by falſe ſuggeſtions) of his Wifes baniſhment.

At laſt, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confeſſions of the Arch Prieſts Treaſons, the Emperor conſulted with his

Counſel that the traitor ſhould be put into a Cauldron of hot burning Oyl, quick, and ſo finiſh his miſerable days, as he had traiterouſly ſought the life of that innocent Lady: So the Execution was ſuddenly to be done, and it being done, the aſſembly of people of all ſorts was diſmiſſed.

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himſelf towards his Lodging, but the Emperor ſorrowful for what happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himſelf at his feet, began thus to ſay: Alas, dear Brother, I am all ſorrowful for this my error, in that I have ſo raſhly committed ſuch a deteſtable crime againſt you, my Lady your Siſter, and the reſidue of theſe great Nobles your attendants: Let it ſuffice, that I behold my own folly: what ſhall I ſay? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my ſelf into your hand, and do to me whatſoever pleaſeth you: and for a further ſatisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto apperrtaining, for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Maſter of mine own affections. Take it I ſay, for I will no longer be ſerved; but during the reſt of my life, will become a ſervant to thee or any, for no better have I deſerved. King Pepin perceiving the Emperor ſo paſſionate, and ſo humble-minded, kindly took him from the ground; and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Treſpaſſes. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded on both parties between them, and a moſt ſpeedy courſe taken to ſend abroad into all parts of the world, to ſeek out the diſtreſſed Lady Belliſant. Thus all things ſetled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperor, and ſo returned back again into his own Country.

CHAP. X.

How King Pepin returned from Conſtantinople into France, and after ſailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had ſurprized the City.

KIng Pepin having taken his leave of Conſtantinople (as you have heard) after a long journey, arrived in France, and ſo to Orleance, to refreſh his long and tyred Spirits, tolled to and fro in melancholly and heavy cogitations, for the woful miſchance befallen unto his Siſter Belliſant. Being thus ſafely arrived, and ſeated at Orleance; the King was right joyful, that at the laſt he had attained the place he ſomuch deſired, by reaſon that it was one of the goodlieſt Forreſts in the Realm of France. Being (as I ſaid) come hither, he cauſed great Banquets to be made for his welcome home; which was accordingly performed.

In the midſt of theſe Feaſtings and Revellings, the Eſquire that had the

the charge of the Orphan Valentine, took and preſented him before the King, ſaying unto his Majeſty on this manner: Dread Soveraign; Lo, here I preſent before you the poor Orphan that your Majeſty found in the Forreſt of Orleance, and the ſame Child which you commanded me to ſee brought up, not at mine own Expence, Dread Soveraign, but your own. My Liege, the reaſon why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, becauſe he is growing to Mans Eſtate; and ſo may it pleaſe your Majeſty, it is time to diſpoſe of him as you pleaſe: The King having heard the words of the Eſquire, called this Orphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved divers queſtions unto him, all which he anſwered with much modeſty, and great wiſdom; and being raviſhed therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate ſhould be given unto him. Moreover (ſaid the King) I command that this Orphan Valentine be dearly preſerved and kept, for that you ſhall perceive I reſpect him above common love; I will alſo, that this Infant ſhall be nouriſhed and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, ſhe is both Fair, Wiſe, and well endowed with all the richeſt Gifts of Nature.

The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accompliſh'd inſomuch that they were both under one Government, of one and the ſame Nurſe, and had one and the ſame Attendants: Yea, every way they joyed one in the Company of the other, in ſuch wiſe, that if the one was but a little abſent from the other, there was a kind of Lamentation till they came together again: but eſpecially the Kings Daughter; who conſidered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that ſhe became in love with him; inſomuch that his abſence brought her into a thouſand fears, and drave her melancholly and diſturbed thoughts, into a thouſand doubts and jealouſies.

Now Valentine was ever practiſing himſelf in Feats of Arms, as Horſe, Armor, Juſts and Turnaments; ſtill expoſing himſelf to all dangers whatſoever. The King wiſely beholding the inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his heart deſired, and furniſhed him with Armour, Horſe, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Poſſeſſions. Being thus furniſhed, there aroſe within the Court many ſecret mutterings, whereby many people ſtirred ſo ſore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words againſt him, ſaying: That when he was at the beſt, he was but a found, ſtray, poor, baſe, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle, nor noble ſtock, and ſuch like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but ſit him down and weep: whoſe tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would, in a tender

Woman-

Woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her tears alſo for company.

At length when he ſaw tears little prevailed, he began to forſake it, and taking heart, bore himſelf like a Man, amongſt the greateſt in the Court, carrying himſelf in ſuch humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all ſorts and degrees as well Nobles as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orſon runs in the Forreſt, all rough, and covered with hair, like a Bear, and leading the life of a beaſt; where we leave him for a while and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It ſo chanced, that there came into Orleance divers Ambaſſadors from the Pope, demanding aid againſt the Sarazens enemies of the Holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin underſtanding hereof by divers Letters received, addreſſed himſelf and his powers, to make his reſiſtance againſt this common Enemy; And among the reſt of his worthy Followers, he ordained this Young Valentine a chief Commander. Fair Eglantine hearing that Valentine ſhould make one, became wondrous heavy and ſorrowful; for that ſhe loved him more than any other Creature, and ſecretly by ſtealth, ſent a Meſſenger unto him to come and ſpeak with her. And when he came, ſhe ſighing, ſaid unto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now I am quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your ſelf to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not ſo deſolate, would to the Gods, that I had neither Father nor Friend in the world to contradict my will, then ſhouldſt thou ſoon perceive how well my affection ſtands to thy perſon: For if wiſhes might avail, I ſwear (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would joyn my ſelf unto, in the bands of Marriage; and then ſhouldeſt thou be the King of France, and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle imaginations; ſaid, Madam, leave theſe womaniſh dotages, you know I am no perſon fitting your eſtate, I am but a found ſtray, that your Father hath cauſed long time to be nouriſhed for charity ſake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meaneſt Damoſel attending your perſon, make your choice elſe-where, and joyn Royal blood unto yours, and ſo with all duty I take my leave; and commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his ſpeech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy, deſolate, and in the midſt of mourning.

By this the King and all his retinue were in a readineſs to depart, and taking their way from Orleance towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forreſt, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and ſaid thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown

to

to you, that in theſe Woods (as report goeth) there liveth a ſtrange Monſter, a Wild-man, much feared of Paſſengers, which ſpectacle of mans ſhape, I long to behold: before I venture out any further upon our intended Voyage to Rome. The Lords generally conſented, and the Chaſe was ſuddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chaſed divers ſorts of wild beaſts; and overcame them: but as for Orſon the wild-man, none durſt adventure the finding forth of him, ſave only his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed ſtill the chaſe; hoping at laſt both to find and to fight with him alſo. Every way they begirt the Wood, ſome one way, ſome another: The King himſelf venturing ſo far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obſcure, whereas the Wild-man uſed to hide himſelf. Orſon perceiving the King, ruſhed out upon him, caught him within his Nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner, caſt him on the ground. The King thus ſuddenly ſurprized by a ſavage man; never looked for life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was ſeconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, which eſpying the King to be almoſt ſtrangled, ſuddenly drew his Sword to have run the Wild-man through. Orſon perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King, and ran furiouſly upon the Knight, took him in his arms and overthrew him Horſe and all. The Horſe fore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forreſt; but as for the Rider, (though a Knight at Arms) Orſon held him ſo faſt with his Twangs and Talons, that at laſt he pulled him in pieces. In the mean ſpace the King eſcaped, and meeting part of his Company, related to them the great danger he had eſcaped, and the fearful Death of the Knight. Theſe tydings much amazed the reſt of the Company: yet being manfully reſolved, they joyned themſelves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with Orſon, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead and torn to pieces, but Orſon they could not find, for the Gods had reſerved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine: of whoſe proceedings you ſhall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiving their labour loſt, gave over the Chaſe, and ſet forward toward Rome. After this, the King ranked his forces into battel-ray, and the great Enſign of France was given to one called Myllon Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wiſe Leader, ſo that he and his two Brethren, Gervays and Sampſon, had the whole command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, King Pepin deſired battel, and would

would fain underſtand the ſtate that the City now ſtood in, under the conqueſt of the Sarazens, but it was told him he ſhould not be too inquiſitive of thoſe affairs; for the Admiral of the Sarazens had ſurpriſed the City, and put multitudes to the ſword, and had ſpoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols; and he conſtrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Archbiſhops, Biſhops, Priors, Monks, Friers, and all the Eccleſiaſtical perſons, for to ſerve at their Heathenish Altars, and to ſacrifice to their Devils, after the cuſtom of the Heathens. When King Pepin underſtood hereof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Chriſtians were thus captivated by Heathens: wherefore he addreſſed himſelf nearer unto the City, and there having aſſembled all his forces he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a ſudden aſſault, for his fury was ſo great againſt theſe Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them; but taking better adviſe, he reſerved himſelf and his Army for a ſeaſon. What after befel, ſhall be delivered at large, when fit occaſion ſerveth our purpoſe.

CHAP. XI.

How King Pepin beſieged Rome, and how Valentine Juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

KIng Pepin being thus come to Rome, beſieged it, and after ſome few days ſpent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty men of War, and began to ſpeak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Chriſtian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Chriſtians to the Sword, and violently trodden under foot all ſuch as withſtood his power; therefore it is our Duties to commiſerate their Eſtate that are thus overthrown, and to try the fortune of a Battle againſt thoſe Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carkaſſes as a Prey, as many have done before. Wherefore I King Pepin, reſting upon this reſolution, would fain find out a man to bear unto the Proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finiſhed his ſpeech, there was none amongſt them made him any anſwer to his requeſt. At length Valentine ſeeing all ſtand mute, ſtepped forth before the Emperor, and began to ſpeak on this manner: Mighty Soveraign, ſo you be pleaſed to give me leave, I ſhall undertake the Meſſage, and ſhall no whit fear to ſpeak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and

to

to the whole hoſt of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return ſhall make proof that I have done my meſſage both with honour and advantage to your Majeſty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, and of ſuch undoubted and valiant reſolution, was right Joyful; and all thoſe of his Princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous ſpirit. Hereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the ſame to Valentine. Valentine prepared himſelf thereunto, and no ſooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his Train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and ſo to the Palace where the Admiral lay, So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and ſaluted him after this manner: The Gods preſerve the Noble and puiſſant King Pepin, my Lord and Soveraign: and Mahomet whom thou ſerveſt, ſave and defend thee, redoubted Admiral. When Valentine had thus ſpoken, the Admiral rouzed him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him: Meſſenger return, and get thee gone out of my ſight, and ſay thus unto King Pepin, will him either to renounce his Faith, and believe on Mahomet, or elſe let him look to receive no other ſentence than death: and ſo deſtroy him, together with all his Lands and Kingdom: Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode, go, I ſay, reply not a word, for my heart is all enraged that ſo long I ſuffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou haſt committed a haughty enterpriſe, thus to enter my Pallace, to deliver any ſuch Meſſage unto me. Wherefore I aſſure thee, by the height of my Majeſty, If that I did aſſuredly know, that what thou haſt done were through pride of heart and inſolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majeſty, thou ſhould'ſt never return to King Pepin, to carry an anſwer to thy proud Maſters Letters. Valentine hearing theſe hot and furious words ſounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid: Wherefore deliberating with himſelf what to reply, he mildly ſaid, High and mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by pride or preſumption I am come before you; for when you ſhall underſtand the manner of my coming, you will be aſtonied thereat. Why then (quoth the Admiral) ſay on, tell us how thou art come, for I ſwear by Mahomet, I ſhall take great pleaſure in hearing thee relate thine enterpriſe. Then ſaid Valentine, Sir, ſo it is, that I was accuſed to King Pepin for a Coward, and that ſince I came with him to this War, I would ſecretly have ſtolen away from the Camp, and returned back again into France:

For which (great Admiral) the King had me in great disgrace, and vowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to lose both Life and Honour and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come unto your Court to defie you on K. Pepin's behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three Spears with you in single Combate, to try your valiandy, and to win unto my self that lost Honour that before I told unto you: Wherefore my request is, that your Greatness would grant me my request, otherwise I dare never return again, lest the King put me to death. The Admiral hearing this pitiful, yet cunning tale of Valentine, said unto him: Son I do swear by Mahomet, thou shalt not be refused; but at this Instant I offer thee the Justs, and to the end that those French-men that lye in siege before the City may have a sight thereof, and see thy valour, I will ordain the place of Justing to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his Acceptance and feigned Love, he fell down and kissed the feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew into great favour in the Admirals Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he could never understand who were his Parents. But while he bestowed his wandring thoughts hereabout, the Admiral said thus unto him: Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive and sad. 'Tis true (quoth he) and not without cause, for I am much afraid that I shall be slain in these Justs, wherefore my request is, that I may have a Confessor to give me absolution for my sins, then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought unto him: The Priest being come, said unto Valentine; Now confess you unto me; Valentine getting the Priest aside, and being together, he said thus unto him: Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and above all other, you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great secresie. Thus it is, You know that this day I am to just with the Heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy of Christian People: Now I am well assured that a great number of the Sarazens will issue forth of the City, to be eye-witnesses of these Justs, to be held without the Walls of the City. Therefore you shall give warning to all Christians to keep within the Walls, arming themselves in a readiness, and closely keep it from the ears of the Pagans: so when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Justs, the Christians suddenly shall surprize the Guards that keeps the Gates, and if any Mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a Messenger to King Pepin of what is done, that he with his Army may come

unto

unto them that are without, while thoſe within are ſet on by the armed Chriſtians, ſo begirting them on every ſide, that in the end we may make ſuch a ſlaughter of them, that the Chriſtians may receive both their City in peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his ſpeech the Priеſt departed: Then the Admiral commanded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he ſhould be honourably attended at the board. Being ſet among many Lords he behaved himſelf gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named Salatas, commanding him to ſee Valentine as well armed at all points as himſelf, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the beſt horſe in his Stable. Salatas having received this Command from his Uncle the Admiral, took Valentine and led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he cauſed to be laid before him divers Armors, willing him to make choice of the beſt: Valentine caſt his eyes upon them all, and at laſt appointed the Armour wherewith he would be armed, and making himſelf ready as faſt as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, whereas he was attended with his horſe ready to put his foot into the ſtirrop. Being come down out of the Hall, he preſently mounted his horſe, the Admiral likewiſe ready armed out of his privy Pallace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the Chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that ſide King Pepin had laid his Siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Hart waving in a field of ſilver, and on one ſide of the Hart a Tree, all which did ſignifie that he was found in a Forreſt, and were the ſame arms King Pepin beſtowed on him. The Champions being entred the Liſts, great was the clamour of the French in joy of Valentine; the ſound whereof the Pagans hearing, ſuddenly iſſued forth out of the City to behold theſe Triumphant Juſts. The Fryer having plaid his part among the Chriſtians within the City, preſently after the Pagans were gone out to behold theſe Triumphs; addicted themſelves to take poſſeſſion of the Gates, which having gotten, there was no entrance again to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpoſe, prepared all his men of War ready to relieve Valentine, if neceſſity required. Having now all things in readineſs, the hour was at hand that the Juſts ſhould begin.

So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly Couched their Spears, and the firſt courſe proved ſo valiant, that their Spears ſhivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving valour to abandon

on the top of his helm, made out a ſecond courſe, where Valentine got the better; for with his Spear (charged againſt the breaſt of the Admiral) he gave him ſuch a ſtrong blow, that he forced his ſpear quite through his body: inſomuch that he fell from his horſe ſtark dead, making a pitiful noiſe at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran ſuddenly upon Valentine, and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a reſolute courage put Spurs to his horſe, and with his Sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickeſt of the Pagans, and ſlew many of them, as he paſſed through them. King Pepin alſo with his Hoſt came up to the aid of Valentine, but he was ſo hard beſet by the Pagans, that he was ſmitten from off his horſe, which Valentine eſpying, came up to the reſcue of the King, ſo that he horſed him again.

The King perceiving himſelf delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and ſaid: My Child, thou haſt ſaved my life, which if the Gods grant to ſpare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battel grew ſo hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Chriſtians that were in the City iſſued on them, and placed the Enſigns and Standards of King Pepin on the

the Walls. The Pagans ſeeing King Pepin's Colours diſplayed upon the Walls, betook themſelves to flight: in chaſe of them the Chriſtians followed on ſo faſt, that they ſhamefully ended their days. In this Battel were ſlain a thouſand Pagans only by the means of Valentine, who bare himſelf ſo valiantly that day, that he was the Death of many of the Pagans. And thus by his Prowels the City was again reſtored to the Chriſtians, for which deed there was great Triumph in all Chriſtendom, but eſpecially at Rome: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlaſting praiſe to Pepin King of France and by the general applauſe of the people he was created Emperor, and Crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, adminiſtring Juſtice to all: And this hapned in the time of Pope Clement the Fourth.

CHAP. XII.

How Haufray and Henry repined at the Love the King did ſhew towards Valentine.

KIng Pepin having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleance; and being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queen, with her little Son Charlemain, and her fair Daughter Eglantine, and their joy appeared ſo much the more, for that Valentine whom ſhe loved ſo dearly, was again returned home in ſafety: Being ſome few days reſted from his weary labours, the Lady ſends for Valentine, who accordingly came unto her, and when ſhe ſaw him, ſhe ſaluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: Valentine, you above all the reſt, are moſt welcome; and well ought it ſo to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and Report ſays, you were the only Champion that drave the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replied; Madam, I can hinder no man to ſpeak what pleaſeth him; but as for my ſelf, I have done little deſerving praiſe, but it hath pleaſed the King your Father to do me great honour, even ſo much, as all the days of my life I am not able to make the leaſt part of recompence: and as he ſpake theſe words, Haufray and Henry, (two men compoſed of all envy) entred the Chamber of Eglantine; and ſeeing him, began thus to ſpeak: Valentine, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Siſter? it is no place for ſuch ſtragglers as you are; this your boldneſs is not to be borne: no man knows of whom you are, therefore we adviſe you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, leaſt you dearly buy theſe your preſumptions: Valentine hearing theſe words, anſwered, Wrong

me

me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Siſter, to her diſhonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not ſo baſe as to offer violence unto one deſcended from the blood of Kings: And further, I promiſe and vow never to come near her Chamber again; and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very penſive all alone.

Valentine haſted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in preſence Haufray and Henry, and the Duke Myllain Daugler, who likewiſe waited upon the King during Dinner-time. Dinner being finiſhed, the King aroſe and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles thus began to ſay: My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deſerved at our hands, and that ſaved my life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good ſervice towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of Clerimont of Avergne, and when I can beſtow more upon him, he ſhall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, ſaying, That he had heaped upon him more Honors than he could any way deſerve. Haufray and Henry hearing theſe words, grew greatly male content, and at laſt Henry began to talk with his Brother on this manner: This found Fellow I perceive grows in great favour with the King, and there muſt be ſome courſe taken to croſs his deſigns, or elſe our overthrow will ſhortly follow upon it; for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be ſet beſide the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this Valentine will ſupport and uphold him againſt us. Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame ſome Plot againſt him, to bring him in diſpleaſure with the King, and ſo far to proſecute your revenge againſt him, that if it be poſſible we will not only work his downfall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleaſure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his ſpeech, Haufray replyed, Let it be as thou haſt ſaid, and that we may entrap his life, this ſhall be our plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Upſtart hath deflowred our Siſter, and that we took him in Bed with her, which when the King heareth, will certainly put him death. Being thus reſolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine; while he (nothing miſtrufting) ſerved the King daily in all duty, inſomuch that the Kings love daily increaſed toward him, and above all other moſt deſired his company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orſon his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forreſt, ſo much feared of all men, that none

dared

durſt approach nigh the Wood. Daily Complaints came unto the King from every ſide, and amongſt the reſt it chanced on a day that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, ſaying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint againſt a Wild-man in the Woods, for one day, as I and my Wife paſſed through the Forreſt, carrying Bread and other Victuals the Wild-man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit, and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and conſtrained her to yield unto his lawleſs luſt. The King hearing out the poor mans tale, was diſpoſed to make himſelf merry with his ill fortune, and thereupon asked the poor man this queſtion: Whether grieved him moſt, either the taking away of his Victuals, or his Wife: By my faith ſaid the poor man, as the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou haſt rightly ſaid (quoth the King:) therefore I command my Treaſurer to ſee reſtitution made unto thee for the loſs of thy Victuals; but as for thy Wife, thou muſt bare the burden thereof thy ſelf.

After this, the King cauſed all his Barons to aſſemble, and take ſome order to take this Orſon, all which they did, and hereupon a Proclamation was ſent unto all parts of the Realm, that whoſoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive or dead, ſhould have a Thouſand Marks for his reward. Hereupon aſſembled many Worthy Knights to take this taſk in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midſt of his Nobles, talking and debating who ſhould be appointed to this buſineſs, Hauſray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, ſaid thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine, whom you have nouriſhed, and advanced to high Dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful lobe to our Siſter Eglantine: He was fitteſt to ſet forward to try his valour, and let him be imployed to fetch in this Wild-man, that is ſuch a terror to the Inhabitants: and if with his Valour he can banquiſh him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his deſired wiſh. The King hearing theſe words of his Son; ſaid, Away, for thy ſpeech ſavoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low Birth, and found in a Forreſt, yet I find him to me true and truſty, and of Gentile carriage, and to me ſeemeth to be born of more Noble Parentage than thou art: leave off theſe thy malicious and bitter ſpeeches againſt him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, ſhews that he is deſcended of more Noble Lineage, than as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers vertues that daily are ſeen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter where ever he pleaſe, for I am well aſſured, that no diſhonor can be offered out of a branch of ſuch a generous Spirit.

Hauſray

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was sore displeased in heart, but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembles his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: Haufray, without any cause given on my part, ye have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and so your revenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King I take a solemn Oath that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead carcass as a witness in the open Field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as also bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an infant in the Wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plung'd, himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing them for that they were the cause of this dangerous enterprize: for he loved Valentine more than any, and at last called unto Valentine, and said, My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for to fight with the Wild-man, is desperation it self, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, and worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that have forsaken this Combate. Therefore I say, let not the evil words of a few malicious men make you desperate in losing your life. For my Child, it is far better to endure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) than to hazard ones life against such a Monster, and no man.

Valentine replied, Pardon me (my Liege) for I will never revoke my intended purpose: They call me found Dear, which grieveth my very soul; for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I rest determined, and so take my leave for to morrow morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, though the fair Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what had happened: but the next morning by break of day, she called one of her Maidens, and said, Go unto Valentine, and bid him come and speak with me before his departure, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damsel did as the Lady commanded, and when she came to Valentine, she found him mounted on horse-back, and she did her message unto him. He understanding her Errand, said unto her,

ber, Damſel, I know the Love to be great between the Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wiſh her to deſire that would turn to her diſhonour. But Envy is of ſo great power, that it never leaves them whom it once poſſeſſeth. For certain it is, that Hauſray and Henry (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious hearts, and will purſue me, even unto Death (if it be poſſible) wherefore fair Damſel, bear her this anſwer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no Evil thereof, and further, that ſhe hold me in excuſe that I refuſe to come; and ſo farewel.

CHAP. XIII.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orſon in the Forreſt of Orleance.

NOw is Valentine upon his journey to the Forreſt, accompanied only with his Page: whither being come, he put his Helmet on his Head, and ſent him back again. So he rode forth all that day, ſeeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him: ſo the Night drawing on, he deſcended from his Horſe, and tyed him up to a Tree: having ſo done, he refreſhed his body with ſuch Victuals as he had brought with him; and when he had eaten, and the day ſhut in, Valentine for fear betook himſelf to the top of a Tree, and there abode all that night. In the Morning as ſoon as day appeared, he looked round about, and at laſt eſpied his Brother Orſon running through the Forreſt. At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his Horſe, the Wild-man much wondring at the beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouze up the Courage of the Horſe, for he had never ſeen the like. The Horſe feeling the Wild-man's nails ſcratching his ſide, began to fling and kick exceedingly. Valentine ſitting on the top of a Tree, noted the terrible ſhape of the Wild man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their aid againſt this Monſter. Orſon all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding the Horſe, and ſtill offered him ſuch injury with his Nails, that the Horſe did nothing but kick and bite him. When Orſon perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught faſt hold on him, and thought to have overthrown him, as though he would have fought with him. Valentine perceiving his Horſe in danger to be ſlain, he cryed out aloud, and ſaid, Wild-man, leave my Horſe, and ſtay but till I come down, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a ſtrange Voice, looked up into the Tree, and eſpying there a man, made unto him divers ſigns with his Hands and Head to

come down, and he would pull him in pieces. Valentine making all the haste he could, drew his Sword and leap'd upon the Ground close by the Wild-man; when Orson saw the Sword, and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himself from the stroak, but suddenly returned again upon Valentine, and threw him unto the Ground. Herewithal Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present Death in the place, for he felt the strength of the Wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both groveling on the Ground, Valentine assay'd divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw that by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed Knife, and smote Orson deep into one of his sides, that the Blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himself wounded, all inraged, he gave such a screech, that the Woods ecchoed again at the sound thereof; but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp Nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the Shield from about the neck of Valentine, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours therein emblazed: when he had looked his fill, he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to Valentine, with the violence of his Nails and Teeth, he brake in pieces both the Ribs of his Armor, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his Nails, that he made the Blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recoyling back, step'd unto a Tree hard by, the which Tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a Club; being thus prepared, he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one Knee; Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous Fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their Fortunes. Orson was so cruel, and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his Sword, for he was sore afraid thereof, by reason he had received a Wound before by a Knife: Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint: In which tiredness both standing gaping on each other, Valentine looked wishly upon Orson, and said thus; Wild-man, wherefore dost thou not yield thy self unto me? Here thou livest like a Beast, having no

knowledge

knowledge of humane Society; come thy way with me, and I ſhall make thee know thy ſelf and others, I will give thee Food of all ſorts, and alſo cloath thee in Apparel fitting humane ſhape.

Orſon underſtanding by ſigns he would his good, fell down upon his Knees, and ſtretched forth his Hands towards his Brother, making ſigns unto him to forgive him, and he would commit himſelf under his command ever after, and with further ſigns promiſed, that during his Life, he would aſſiſt him both in Body and Goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which ſo many Knights durſt not meddle withal: for by this only he had won himſelf more Honour than any Knight that lived in France in thoſe days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orſon by the hand, and ſhewed him by ſigns, that he ſhould go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not truſt him behind; and being out of the Wood, Valentine took off one of his Girts, and bound both of his Hands faſt unto his Body, that he ſhould not attempt againſt to do him any hurt; and in this manner being bound, he mounted on Horſe-back, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beaſt, who never reſted, which was a thing moſt of all to be wondred at.

CHAP. XIV.

How Valentine having conquered Orſon the Wild-man, departed from the Forreſt towards Orleance, wherein King Pepin was reſident.

VAlentine having conquered the Wild-man, (as ye have heard;) took his way towards Orleance, but you muſt imagine he could not reach there in one day, wherefore the day being ſpent, he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village: being come thither he thought there to take reſt that Night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the Wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his Houſe, ſhutting up their doors, and for very fear durſt not offer once to look out on him: Valentine perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them, ſaying, Open your Doors every man, and fear not, for we come only for lodging; yet for all this, they would not give him ſuccour: At laſt ſeeing neither Intreaty nor Threatnings would prevail, he ſwore moſt bitterly that if they would not receive him into their Houſes, to reſt there that Night, he would let looſe the Wild-man amongſt them; ſtill he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At laſt, as he had threat-

ned, so he did, and letting loose the Wild-man, he made him signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did, and wringing a Post from out of the Earth, he therewithal flung them open with such violence, that they fell off the hooks upon the Ground. Valentine seeing the Gate opened in this manner, entred the House, and the Wild man with him: But when they within saw the Gate broken down, they all forsook the House, and ran out at the back-door, leaving all to Valentine and his Beastly Guest. Valentine perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up his Horse, and dressed him, and Orson in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons and divers other provisions of Flesh upon a Spit roasting at the Fire. Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should turn the Spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his horny Tallons upon the Meat, and tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf: when he had torn the Meat in pieces, he espyed a Caldron of Water standing by, into which he put his Head like a Horse, and drank water unmeasurably. Valentine perceiving him to be athirst, made signs unto him, that he should forsake the Water, and he would give him Wine, and therewithal took a Pot, and led him into the Cellar: when Valentine had drawn the Pot full of Wine, he gave it unto Orson, who set it unto his Mouth, and tasting the Liquor, found it to be very good, drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the Wine, and afterward threw the Pot against the Ground, making a sign unto Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his signs, and filled him the Pot again, but Orson espying before his sight a little Bowl dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to Valentine's Horse, but Valentine perceiving that, made signs unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but Water, yet Orson shewed again by signs, that Wine was a great deal better then Water. Many other Accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we will pass over, for the Night was so far spent, that Rest were fitter for them than Meat. Valentine hasned him to Supper, making Orson to bear him company (after his kind) but Orson drank so freely of the Wine that Valentine gave him, that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell fast asleep. Valentine seeing what had happened, said, Now do I perceive that there is neither any strength, nor resistance in this Wild-man, for if I would, I could suddenly here end his days: But in regard he would make a further trial of him, he punched against him with his Foot so hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made signs unto him, that there was People about

about the houſe: with that, Orſon ſuddenly roſe as in a trance, and catching up a great log within the Chimney, he ran againſt the Gate of the Houſe, that he made all ſhake again; at which ſudden action, Valentine fell into a great Laughter, which Orſon perceiving, let all alone, and betook himſelf to his reſt again. Valentine made unto him another ſign, that he ſhould fear nothing, for he would be his Watch-man, but Orſon would not ſleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as he before had promiſed unto Orſon, and watched all that night, fearing the Inhabitants, leſt that they ſhould grow into an uproar, for they were ſo greatly poſſeſſed with fear, that they forſook their Houſes, and ran every one to the Church, and all that night ſo tumbled the Bells backward, that e're the Morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War.

Now the Morning being come, Valentine betook him to his Horſe, leading Orſon bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleance, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every man into his houſe, ſhutting their doors, and getting up into their higher Rooms, gazing out of their Windows. Being entred the City, Tydings came to King Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly aſtonied, and at laſt ſaid: Valentine, my Child, in a happy hour waſt thou born, bleſſed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood, for now I ſee thou art fortunate, and by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleance, till he came at the Palace Gate of the King, and when the Porter ſaw Orſon, they ſhut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice ſaid unto them Fear not, but go tell the King that I will ſhield him and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have him ſo tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine ſaid, who commanded they ſhould enter the Palace. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, and led him into the Court. When Bertha and the fair Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear, Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King Pepin ſat, accompanyed with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongſt the reſt ſtood Haufray and Henry, who alſo made great ſhew of love, but in heart wiſhed the Wild-man had been his death. King Pepin, and the reſt of the Lords gazed on the Wild-man, inſomuch as the King ſaid, he is made of a proper mold, fair of ſtature, and though now he ſeem-

ſeem rough, yet if he were cloathed, he would become the ſhape of a right worthy Knight. Then Valentine ſaid my Liege, it were requiſite he, were baptized. It pleaſeth me well (ſaid the King) let it be done. So the Prieſt was appointed to baptize him: theſe were his God-Fathers, King Pepin and M. Millain: Valentine, and the Dutcheſs of Bourbon; So they called his name Orſon: the Baptiſm being ſolemnized, the King ſat him down to Dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup: then Orſon was commanded into Hall to ſee his behaviour, and being come, the King beheld him earneſtly. Orſon ſeeing the Meat, took as much as he could graſp in his hand, and devoured it. Having eaten that he eſpyed one of the Attendants who brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him, ſnatched away the Peacock, and ſat him down and devoured it moſt greedily. Valentine ſeeing his behaviour, made ſigns unto him that he did not well, whereat Orſon ſeemed aſhamed; but the King bad let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeneſs. Orſon having devoured much meat, got a pot of Wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ſtround. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber

and

and a Bed for Orſon in the ſame, but as ſoon as ever he entred the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and ſo fell aſleep.

CHAP. XV.

How Haufray and Henry took Counſel together to Murther Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine.

RIght glad and joyful was the fair Lady Eglantine that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man, inſomuch that ſhe ſent him word to bring the Wild-man into her preſence. Then Valentine took Orſon by the hand, and led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where were aſſembled divers Ladies of Honour to behold him: Orſon being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt upon the bed there making divers ſigns unto the Ladies, which pleaſed them, but his meaning they could not underſtand, at which they were right ſorry. At laſt Valentine opened to them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiſs and play with ſome of them, whereat they looked one upon another and began to laugh. While this aſſembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufray came to Henry and ſaid thus unto him: Brother, you ſee how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling encreaſeth, which much eclipſeth our Honour, and we muſt ſeek ſome remedy for it. It is true (ſaid Henry) wherefore let us lay ſome Plot to cut him off. Then ſaid Henry, hearken what I ſhall ſay, Valentine is now with our Siſter, and we may have fit occaſion to kill him in her Chamber: when we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her bed. Accordingly to their determination, they put it into Action, and ruſhed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As ſoon as Haufray was entred, he roughly thus began with Valentine. Diſloyal man, now ſhalt thou know the price of thy inconſtancy, purchaſing daily great diſhonour unto the King our Father, by abuſing our Siſter Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleaſure on her, inſomuch as by thee ſhe is made unfortunate. But ſith the King hath been told hereof, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take Vengance of thee in our own Perſons. And Haufray lift up his fiſt, and calling him Traytor, ſmote Valentine on the face, ſo that the blood ran out of his mouth. Henry on the other ſide came to him, and with a Glave thought to have ſmitten Valentine to the earth. Orſon perceiving they were in earneſt, leapt out, and gave Haufray ſuch a ſtroak with his rough hand, that he felled him, and after ran to Henry, and girded

girded him so between his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

This caused an Outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamour, but when they understood that Orson had dealt so violently with the Kings Sons they would have killed him with their Swords. Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his Sword, and swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them through: this said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he rested himself for that time. Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild man, saying, Father in an ill hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow; and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person: The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer; that as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before the King, began to say on this manner: Dread Sovereign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine: accompanied with divers other Ladies that desired to see Orson; I know not how, nor why your two Sons Haufray and Henry violently entred the Chamber, charging me that I had abused the Body of your fair Daughter: Moreover in the heat of their violence used against me, Haufray smote me on the face, that the blood issued; and Henry lifting up his Sword, thought to have taken away my life: All which when Orson saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the earth, and therewithal began this uproar. The King hearing this tale, said, And is this true that you have said? Upon my life (said Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, Orson hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I see right well that you are even swollen full of malice against Valentine; wherefore I charge you from henceforth that you attempt no ill against him, for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many tryals of his love and faithfulness toward me: and with this answer Haufray and Henry departed, although sorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, Valentine stayed still in the King's Hall amongst

the

the other Nobles that were there aſſembled, and Orſon went here and there round about the Palace, at laſt he came unto the Kitchen where the Cooks were making ready Supper, and being there, he eſpyed two Capons ready for the fire, Orſon made towards the Capons, and ſet upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook ſeeing him eat up his Capons, took a Peſtle lying by him, and gave Orſon ſuch a blow, that he made him bow therewith; Orſon feeling the blow, ſtooped down, and took the Cook up between the Legs, throwing him down upon the Ground, and being down, he ſo belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to death. Then was he brought unto the King, that Orſon had ſlain the Cook, and none durſt come near him.

The King hearing thereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made ſigns unto him that he ſhould be hanged; But Orſon fetched the Peſtle, and made ſigns how the Cook had beaten him therewith; wherefore the King commanded that none ſhould offer him any Injury. So after that, Valentine taught him Manners how he ſhould behave himſelf; and ſo they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.

CHAP. XVI.

How Duke Savary ſent unto K. Pepin for aid againſt the Great Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage againſt his Will.

IT chanced that not long after the coming home of Valentine and Orſon into the Court of K. Pepin, that Duke Savary ſent certain Meſſengers unto K. Pepin, which ſaid to him on this manner; Great King, our good Duke hath ſent us unto you, to requeſt your Aid againſt a falſe and accurſed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath beſieged his Confines, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of Arms againſt his Will, notwithſtanding all the reſiſtance that he and his three Sons can make againſt him. The King having heard this Meſſage, made this anſwer; We agree to give him all the aid we can. He had no ſooner given anſwer unto the Meſſengers, but there was come unto the Court another Meſſenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, ſaid thus unto him, Renowned King, aſſemble your Men of War in readineſs, and conduct them towards Lyons, for the Almains are coming againſt you in great numbers, their whole force conſiſting of above an hundred thouſand fighting men. The King hearing of this ſudden news, was much troubled in mind; and preſently called before him the Arch-

biſhop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Daugler, Garvas and Sampſon, theſe with others of his Nobles being aſſembled, he declared what the Meſſenger had ſaid, and withal, craved their counſel what was beſt to be done, whether to go to Aquitain to ſuccor Duke Savary, or to Lyons to reſiſt the Almains? whereunto Myllon Daugler made this anſwer; The Duke, I confeſs, deſerveth to be ſuccoured, but yet in two Extreams, let us chuſe the leſs: Therefore I judge it moſt meet, firſt to defend our own Land, that is now in preſent danger, and for the Duke, he muſt be content to take our preſent Affairs for anſwer: So generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With theſe words, the Meſſenger that came from the Duke Savary departed, and carried theſe Tydings with him to Aquitain, which made him very ſorrowful to hear it, becauſe the Green Knight had very ſtrongly aſſailed him. Now here gentle Reader, I let you underſtand, for the better ordering your proceedings, that this Green Knight here ſpoken of, was Brother to Ferragus, the Gyant that kept the Lady Belliſant in his Caſtle, who was the diſtreſſed Mother of theſe two Infants born in the Wood; called Valentine and Orſon, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all, of what condition ſoever, ſhould be ready arm'd againſt the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the Green Knight, and fight with him in the Field; all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both Armies met, as well Horſe as Foot, the Pagans preſented themſelves in multitudes, and the Green Knight behaved himſelf ſo valiantly, that at the firſt encounter, with his Battle-Ax at two blows he ſlew two valiant Knights: Duke Savary perceiving him to be ſo valiant a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting, they aſſailed each other; but the Duke was ill-adviſed to venture his Body againſt the Green Knight, becauſe it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he ſhould never be overcome of any, except he were a King's Son, and ſuch a one as had never ſucked the Breaſts of any Woman. But the Green Knight was herein deceived, for he thought it impoſſible any ſuch Man ſhould be upon the face of the Earth; but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you ſhall underſtand. Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured ſo far into the Enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; for he was round begirt with ſuch multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken Priſoner, and brought back unto the Green Knight, whoſe Ranſome could not be granted

ted for any Gold or Treaſure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke ſurprized, returned unto Aquitain, ſore lamenting the loſs of their good Duke. And his three Sons, Garin the elder, Anſelmne and Garin the younger, made great moan to ſee the hard hap of their Father, led Captive among the Pagans.

The Sons having ſhewed their Sorrows, in comes Fezon his Daughter with this lamenting out-cry; Alas, in an ill hour was I born, ſeeing there ſo many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have ſuffered Death in my quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my diſtempered Soul than all the reſt, which is this, that my Father ſhould be held Captive in the hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged Years with Sorrow to the Grave. Alas (dear Father) your Love to me is the only cauſe of all theſe diſaſterous Chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of Diſcontent, inſomuch, as with this extremity of Sorrow, ſhe had well nigh finiſhed her days, had not the reſt of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great Sorrow, wherewith ſhe was almoſt overcome.

Whilſt the Lady was thus oppreſſed with Sorrow, the Green Knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, cauſing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion, and having him there, began to revile him in this diſdainful manner; Duke, now thou perceiveſt that thou art my Vaſſal, and that I have power over thy Life; this that I ſpeak thou canſt not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou ſhalt expect from my ſacred Lips; either give me thy Daughter Fezon to Wife, and ſo redeem thy Life, or elſe I will have her againſt thy will, leading her amongſt rough Mountains, and there Royally Crown her Queen of thoſe craggy Manſions.

The Duke hearing theſe proud Menaces, began thus to reply; Proud and inſolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give conſent that thou have my Daughter, except thou alſo ſubſcribe to be Baptized. The Green Knight hearing him ſay ſo, replied; Urge me not further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet; Wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my demand, I will firſt make thee finiſh thy days miſerably, and afterwards conſume all Aquitain to Aſhes, and after that, put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus reſolute, began again on this manner; Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy Cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power than thine. The Green Knight hearing him ſay ſo, began wiſhly to ſet his Eye upon him, and marking his unwonted Lamen-

rations, began afresh with him on this manner; Brave Duke, leave off these thy sad Laments, and hearken unto my relation and resolution also, and this it is: I am not ashamed to let you understand, that thy Daughter's beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recal my threatned sentence of death against thee; out of which captivate affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to this condition, that thou shalt find out a Knight within the space of six Months, to encounter me; and if it so happen, that by strength of Arms he conquer me, I vow by all the Heavens, to send thee back into thy own Country, without walking any of the same: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy fair Daughter into my hand, to be my lawful Wife. These Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

These Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave leave that Duke Savary should depart, upon Conditions, that he should swear to keep Covenants, not only for the present, but during his Life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his repair to Aquitain, whither being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those Conditions, whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his said Daughter: and withal, the Truce taken for the space of six Months. His Counsellors hearing what was past, advised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these Advertisements following: If there were any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the Green Knight for the Love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he should lay down his Gage and so be answered. These Letters were sent into 12 Christian Lands; what followed, you may better learn by the succeeding Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How divers Knights arrived at Aquitain, at a solemn Just there holden to bear away the Love of the beauteous Lady Fezon.

During this time of the Truce, between Duke Savary and the Green Knight, Pepin King of France, had taken his Journey against his Enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Host of Men, being come before the City with all his Forces, he set upon a King called Lampatris, who had also brought into the Field 10000 fighting Men. This Lampatris was King of Syres, Holland, and Frizeland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which stood a very strong defenced City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge

hereof

thereof, ſtrongly begirt the City with a Siege, inſomuch that at laſt they were conſtrained to yield, or ſuffer Famiſhment; but reſolving upon the ſafety of their Lives, they yielded their City, which City the King beſtowed upon Guy, Marſhal of France. The Wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France, with all his Warlike Soldiers. Being arrived at Paris, it was told him, the Duke Savary had taken Truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing heartily, ſaid in the preſence of his Barons; Who is he amongſt you that would win fair Fezon for his Love, muſt take upon him a Combat againſt the Green Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one half of his Poſſeſſions: and that this is true, behold Letters written with his own Hand. Every one of theſe worthy Knights right diligently viewed theſe Letters, yet none of them durſt undertake the Enterpriſe, ſave only Valentine, who perceiving them all refuſe it, ſaid thus unto the King; Right dear Soveraign, if it pleaſe you to give me leave, I will adventure my ſtrength upon that Green Knight, and will gladly undertake the Taſk committed. Again, I have a great deſire to leave France, for I long to take in hand ſome tedious Journey, to find out the Mother that bore me, and from whence I am deſcended. Valentine (ſaid the King) take thou no care whence thou art, for it reſteth in my power to make thee greater then any Man within my Court, and for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitain, I freely give thee leave, but on condition, that after thou haſt tryed thy Manhood with the Green Knight, thou return again, if thou eſcape with Life. Valentine yielded to the King in his Demand, and ſo taking leave, he ſhortly after prepared to his Journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go to Aquitain, ſhe was very ſorrowful, and at laſt in the midſt of Tears, ſent for Valentine to come unto her; Valentine promiſed the Meſſenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and being come, ſhe burſt forth in Tears, ſaying, Ah Valentine, now I do well perceive that all my Joys are at an end, and that you are reſolved to leave this Country of France. Ah! would to God it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man living, whom I hold ſo dear as you and (were not I curbed by my high Birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayeſt the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the Keys of all my Treaſure, and take what pleaſeth thee, for there is great ſtore; and the Gods give thee ſuccour, in all thy Knightly Enterprizes.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold I need none, but that which muſt

of

of all distempereth my unquiet breast, is, That I cannot learn of my descent. Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which, That I bear upon one of my shoulders a Cross, and it is of the colour of most pure Gold, of which sign I know not what to gather, but resolve thus, never to rest in any place, untill such time as I have found out the truth of my Nativity: and so lovely Lady, I take my leave, earnestly requesting you to stop the current of these Brinish tears, and withal, I vow, That if I find my Birth answerable to the Majesty from whence you are descended, to take you as my only choice to wife, forsaking all other. On the other side, having found out my birth; and perceiving it not answerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the wealth in the world: For malicious tongues in time to come will say, where are the Brethren Sisters or Cozens of this runagade, that hath presumed to match himself unto the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin. Having spoken all these words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of grief. But when she had some little time sat still, she could not be satisfied, but offered to follow him whithersoever he went; and in conclusion, brought him some part of his way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufray and Henry were right glad thereof, privily conspiring how to bring it to pass, that Valentine and his Brother Orson (who went along with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely death.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.

VAlentine and Orson having taken their leave of King Pepin, addressed themselves for Aquitain. Being on their way Haufray and Henry consulted together (joyning to their Aid a Third who was Cozen to them both) how they might lye in Ambush to set upon Valentine and Orson, to work their destruction: which number was about thirty strong able men. This Plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to these warlike men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Brother Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large and great Forrest, through which Valentine must need pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it so chanced that Valentine came riding along the Forrest

Forreſt with Orſon running by his ſide ſwifter than a Horſe, who coming near the place where theſe armed men lay, forty ſteps their Captain (called Gryger) accompanied with all his troop, with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have ſurpriz'd Valentine on the ſudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traytor lent him ſuch a mortal blow,

that the ſword pierced quite through his Armour, and entred into the fleſh, inſomuch as the blood followed the blow, and withal uttered forth theſe unwelcome words, Valentine, either yield thy ſelf captive, or receive thy death. Valentine, as a man all amazed, was ſomewhat moved at the ſight of his own blood, and conſidering how he was encompaſs'd with a multitude of his enemies recommending his innocency unto the Gods, at laſt ſpoke on this manner: My Lords (ſpeaking to Hauſray and Henry) I ſee well that you have determined my days by Treaſon, and without cauſe on my part given, but yet I aſſure you, that before I yield my ſelf into your hands, or before this days Sun be ſet, I ſhall ſend ſome of you here preſent into ſuch a Country, that you ſhall ſcarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your Valour. And therewithal drew forth his

Sword,

Sword, and gave the first that encountred him such a blow upon the head, that he clave it even to the Teeth, and there he lay dead: After that, he betook him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroak one fell before him.

Orson perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouze himself, and with his rough hands and piercing tallons, he rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his teeth that they fell grovelling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seing his Brother Orson thus beset himself, held up his bloody Sword, defending himself, and offending his enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight; Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pitifully killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine, yet I wish thee yield, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these insulting words, made towards Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner assailed him; but being too forward, he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orson with their long spears. Being thus begirt with enemies, he still behaving himself so valiantly that none durst lay hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away with strong hands. Orson perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a Hideous noise, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter than he could run, and having at last lost the sight of them, knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain commanded them to follow after Orson, and to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, and so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a Deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that in his grief, he burst out into these speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction: Farewel Noble King Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all vexeth me, is; that they never shall understand the truth of my death, for the very stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my breath; farewel Orson too, for thou hast

already

already ſuffered death for my ſake, and more could no Man do, even as much as if thou hadſt been my natural Brother: Farewel my dear Mother alſo, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might ſee and know her, but my hopes are all fruſtrated, for I now muſt dye without the knowledge of what Parentage I am deſcended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark Pit, whilſt his Enemies determine what ſhall be done to him: Some were of opinion to put him to death; others that he ſhould be committed to a perpetual Impriſonment: But Grygar being Lord over the reſt, would not yield he ſhould be put to Death, but rather to keep him in Priſon till Hauſray and Henry have received knowledge of all their Proceedings. Having thus ſet down their reſolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Hauſray and Henry, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treaſon. Now underſtand, that Orſon all that Night was fain to reſt within the Wood, lying down at the Root of a Tree: the Morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris alſo, never reſting till he came into the Preſence of King Pepin: being come thither, by ſigns and tokens he ſhewed the manner of the taking of Valentine; but yet for all the haſte he made, Grygar arrived at the Court before him. Hauſray and Henry were much grieved that Orſon had eſcaped, but all their Comfort was, he could not ſpeak, thinking thereby for to eſcape from miſtruſt and ſuſpition, but their Hopes were all laid in the Duſt, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the two Brethren had appointed that Grygar ſhould return in all haſte to the Caſtle to put Valentine to death, thereby thinking all their Treaſons might paſs undiſcovered: But ſee how it come about, that all their Counſels were quite overthrown; for Orſon (as before is ſaid) came unto the King's Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with ſundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every Man took his place. The King being ſet, and caſting his Eyes about, ſuddenly eſpied Orſon, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orſon ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noiſe, and knocking his Breaſt in moſt hideous and fearful manner, which drove the King into ten thouſand Fears, and all the reſt who beheld this lamentable Spectacle. Orſon ran along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every Man, and making many fearful ſigns: Amongſt the reſt, at the laſt he lighted upon the traytor Grygar, who eſpying Orſon, hung his Head in his Boſom: Orſon having once

got the sight of him, run furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroak, that he smote off one of his Ears; after he began to lay upon his Face, insomuch that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth: Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for help, but Orson hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such another stroak, that he felled him unto the Earth, overthrowing Tables, Wear, and all that stood before him; which drove all the beholders into admiration: and had he not been relieved by a valiant Prince that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having relieved him, began to say unto the King on this manner; Mighty King, consider into what danger this Man is fallen by the fury of this Wild-man: and either let him dye for this presumptuous Fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replyed; We will consider the Cause, and as we find it, so we will proceed against him: Bring him hither before us, that we may question the cause of the Fact. Orson was upon these Words brought before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume so far into the Presence of his Majesty? Orson presently answered by signs, how he had slain Valentine in the Forrest, and that he would be revenged for his Death, on that inhumane traytor Grygar, and withal closed his Fist, and put it to his Mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. King Pepin perceiving by his Actions, the cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this Wild-man hath challenged Grygar to fight with him, therefore tell me your Opinions what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden Secret to lie therein, and for my part I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by Combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the Verdict that the King had passed. So the Battel was determined and Grygar was brought to the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without cause; for he foresaw thereby, that his Treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill-favoured eye on Hausray: Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said; Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee, however it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for he will work your Peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never

never to reveal the Fact: yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the caſe will go with me, I muſt ſuffer a reproachful Death for your ſake. Having thus ſaid, he left Henry, and returned unto the King, ſaying; Mighty King, let me make one Requeſt unto your Majeſty, that you would diſmiſs me from this dangerous Taſk, the reaſon chiefly moving me, is, that inſomuch that it is not Men againſt Man, whereby a Knight may win Honour, but a Wild Savage to encounter with Man, and no Knight: I think I may ſafely (ſo your Grace be pleaſed) refuſe the Combat. Nay (quoth the King) no excuſe in this caſe can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my advice, but alſo by the Counſel of all my Barons, and the reaſon moving us to grant it, was, that Treaſon long lying hid, might come to light. Grygar hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into deſpair: but Hauſray being there preſent, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have Equity on your part; and beſides I will ſee you well armed in all points, fitting your Knightly race.

When Orſon gathered by his wonted ſigns, that he ſhould fight with this Traytor, he was right glad, and withal, made ſhews unto the King that Valentine was dead, whereat the King grew wondrous ſad, and faid would Orſon have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the King commanded him to be taken away; making ſigns unto him that he ſhould ſtrike no more, till the time they could meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the King called unto Grygar, to make haſte to arm himſelf; Grygar lothly to venture his Life upon ſo uncertain ground, began once again to ſpeak unto the King ſaying; Moſt dread Soveraign, I have been a long ſervitor about your Perſon, both in War and Peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inſomuch as you compel me to fight againſt a Man that hath neither Sence, Reaſon, nor in truth, Humane Shape. Grygar (ſaid the King) if the Truth be on your ſide, you need not fear, for you ſhall enter into the Field well armed, and as for Orſon he ſhall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you ſhall be well mounted on Horſe-back, he on Foot, nor ſhall he bear any Weapon. The right you ſay, is on your ſide, wherefore maintain that Right, and ſhew your Valour, for the ſentence of Combat may not be recalled.

CHAP. XIX.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.

THe place of Combat being appointed, Orson attended in a readiness for his Enemy; in the end, Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wise: My Lords, in your cause am I delivered over to Death, evil was the day wherein I began this Enterprize. Hold thy Peace (said Henry) for I will defend thee from the sentence of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret.

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his Horse, went towards the Palace-Gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the hour being come, the King repaired to the Window to behold the Combat: All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espyed Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying;

Villain, thou hast offered me great wrong, in putting out one of my Eyes, but e're I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the King. Orson perceiving whereunto his proud Speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, gnashing his Teeth together at him: whereat Grygar suddenly Couched his Spear within his Rest, and ran upon him: Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, and ran his Spear fast into the Ground; Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returning back again, seized the Spear into his own Hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroak therewith, that he astonied him. Grygar feeling the fury of his stroak, set Spurs to his Horse, and rid like a mad man about the Field: Orson ran after him with a grinning Countenance, making signs to the King that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these Words; Ah Haufray, for thy cause and sake I am thus delivered over to Death. Long and tedious was the Fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the Wild-man.

At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad

and

and furious, that he overthrew his Rider to the Earth, and with the fall he lost his Shield. Orson espying the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back, after he came unto Grygar's Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the Field, and making ill-favoured signs and tokens; insomuch, as all the Beholders there present, stood as men dismayed. Amongst the rest, the King himself appeared very sorrowful, and at last began thus to speak; My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this Fight will grow; but it is my opinion, that there is Treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the Field on Horse-back after his Enemy, at last espyed his Horse, and encountred Grygar on Foot, insomuch that he lent him such a blow that he smote him to the Earth: afterward he leaped upon him, and disarmed him of his Weapons: then the next blow he struck, he smote off one of his Arms: next on the Body he gave him such a Wound, that it cut him even to the Reins of his Back. Grygar having received all these Wounds, cryed out most pitifully, insomuch that every one requested he might have a Priest to confess him of his Sins. The Guard that was appointed for the Field, hearing these Out-crys, sent out a worthy Knight to demand what he would have done: Unto whom Grygar said; Sir, bring me before the King's Majesty, and before him and the rest of this Assembly I shall reveal the Treasons wherein I am guilty, from point to point effectually.

CHAP. XX.

How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin; and how Haufrey and Henry, had been only Plotters thereof against the worthy Valentine.

At last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high Offence, and in the presence of all the Beholders, told him, that the only Actors in this traiterous Plot, were Haufray and Henry his Sons, and by their means he had taken Valentine and put him in Prison, and there meaned (in secret manner) to have put him to death. The King having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this Plot against Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The King having thus given sentence against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all haste

haste possible unto the Prison where Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King in Person would undertake such a Journey, addressed himself to run along by the King's Horse, leading him the way, and making many signs of joy and gladness all the way he went. The King marking well all the Wild-mans behaviour, often spake unto his Lords in this manner; My Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man should bear such an ardent affection towards Valentine; and besides, it strikes me into a thousand Imaginations: Now you must know, that the King had great cause even to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come, to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond (Sister unto the Gyant Ferragus) it should be made manifest; for at that time Clerimond had a Castle, and in it a Head of Brass, composed by Negromancy, which Head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her Life; and also, all that ever she had done in her forepassed time: besides, this same Head was composed by such wondrous Magick Art, that it should never leave off speaking, until the Noblest Knight in the World should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, and for whom he shall endure a World of Miseries, as (God willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back again to King Pepin, where before we left him. King Pepin goeth on his Journey towards the Forrest, to save the Life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was imprison'd: Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the Residue within the Castle, upon pain of Life. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within the Castle, they seized upon all seditious Traitors, and bound them fast in Chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King: Valentine espying the King, fell upon his Knees, yielding him thousands of Thanks for that extraordinary kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a Hell of Darkness, and fear of Death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him with great Joy and Gladness, telling to him all that had happened, and how that Orion had fought with the Traytor Grygar, in his quarrel, and overcame him: Valentine hearing thereof

thereof, imbraced Orſon. Afterward the King commanded that all the Traytors ſhould be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after ſpake thus unto Valentine; Valentine, ſeeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculouſly delivered out of the hands of thine Enemies, I would adviſe thee to abide with me: but he replyed; Dread Soveraign, Pardon me, for I will never return again till I have found out the Parents of whence I am deſcended; and ſo humbly I take my leave of your Majeſty. So here for leave King Pepin, and only look upon Valentine and Orſon, who are taking their way towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Knight, a man feared of all men; For I muſt call to Remembrance, that of which I told you before, that he ſhould never be vanquiſhed by any, ſave only by a King's Son that had never ſucked Woman. Being come to Aquitain, the People flocked from all parts to ſee the rough and unmanly ſhape of Orſon, but Valentine ſeeing their folly, made him a Jacket of Steel to put upon him; when Orſon had it on his Back, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away but he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orſon having his Steel Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himſelf, and at laſt became proud thereof, and ſet his Countenance according to his heart. Now as they were riding on their way, Valentine eſpyed a fair Squire, making much lamentation: Valentine beholding him well, ſaid thus unto him, Friend, what aileth you to ſhed theſe Tears, have you ſuſtained any wrong either by Man or Beaſt? tell me what may be the cauſe, and I promiſe you the beſt of my power to relieve your diſtreſſed caſe. Alas, (ſaid the Squire) thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cauſe of my Laments, is the loſs of a moſt kind and gentle Maſter, and a Man of the greateſt Valour in Chriſtendom. How have you loſt him? (quoth Valentine) Sir, as I was travelling towards Aquitain, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairеſt Lady in the World, (called Fezon) which Lady it is not poſſible for any one to have, except firſt he overcome in ſingle combat the Green Knight: divers valiant Knights have there miſcarried; and when he conquereth them, he cauſeth them to be hanged on a Tree, and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no ſhew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (quoth Valentine) that thou haſt told me? Why then! ſure he is ſome Devil in Man's ſhape that doth ſuch ſtrange Exploits: But towards Aquitain am I journeying, to try my Fortune againſt him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon. Ha Sir! (quoth the Squire) go not thither, to loſe your Life upon ſuch a Devil. Squire,

ſaid

said Valentine, I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous Green Knight; but if I can escape him, I will first talk with the Lady Fezon and take her Advertisement.

Orson gathering some understanding of their Talk, made signs unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green Knight, and that he would make Love to the Lady Fezon; whereat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time I think them to be come near to the City of Aquitain, standing upon a Hill; and meeting with an Old Man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him. Marry (quoth he) it is Aquitain. Now tell me (said Valentine) where resteth the Green Knight? Why Sir (said he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (quoth Valentine,) Ah Sir! (said the Old Man) undertake not so foul a Folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew thee above forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome. Also there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, and the Duke of Aquitain must part with his fair Daughter Fezon, to his great grief, and the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (quoth Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke those words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore Years of Age, in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, Squire to that distressed Bellisant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellisant into the Castle of Ferragus the Gyant, as before we have declared; Valentine espying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, (quoth the Pilgrim) from Constantinople, but I could not enter into the City, by reason a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a Siege, neither could I come to deliver the Message on which I am sent, wherefore I thought it my safest course to return. Pilgrim (quoth Valentine) what thinkest thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be overcome? No (said the Pilgrim) I advise you not to follow the Enterprize, for if there were a whole Hundred of you, he would see the end of you all. Father, whether go you? (said Valentine) Sir, I take my readiest way to Paris, for I have a Message to King Pepin, from a Sister of his named Bellisant, that long hath been banished from Constantinople wrongfully, and now is the good Lady in the House of Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably, intending to know King Pepin's mind, whether he be contented to these Wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of Greece, for that he hath so wrongfully Banished her. Palmer (quoth

(quoth Valentine) I pray thee to return back again with me to Aquitain, for thither am I going, to fight with the Green Knight. If the Gods give me Victory againſt him, I will accompany thee into France, for I ſhall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto King Pepin, undertake I this Fight, for he hath been the means of my preſervation, and as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my Labours, and reſt wholly at his Command. Sir (quoth Blandiman) to this motion I will never conſent, for my Lady hath put me in truſt to diſpatch her Affairs, and I will diſcharge the duty of a truſty Servant towards her, and ſo taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cauſe, but he wiſt not why; for this was the Man that had born a part of his Mother's Exiles. Well, Valentine alſo took on his Journey, and after ſome few days, came near to the City of Aquitain.

Valentine beheld the City very earneſtly, and paſſing on, he eſpied a pleaſant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horſe, laid him down under a Tree, to refreſh his tired Limbs, and Orſon was his keeper all the while he ſlept: Anon he awaked and prepared himſelf to take Horſe again, but ſuddenly there arrived at the ſame Fountain, a moſt curious Knight, proud and of ſo haughty a Stomach, that he was ſtyled the Proud Knight, and withal, ſo fierce and reſolute, that he never all the days of his Life asked Queſtion of any Man, yet if he whom he met ſaluted him not, he preſently killed him. This Proud Knight came to the Fountain, and Valentine beholding him, ſaid never a word, and Orſon alſo gazed fiercely upon him. The proud Knight was angred in his Heart, and approached near unto Orſon, and gave him ſuch a blow, that the Blood iſſued out of his Mouth; Orſon feeling the blow ſmart, ſuddenly took him and threw him to the Earth under him, and preſently eſpying a Knife at the Knight's Girdle, ſmote him therewith into the Body ſo deep, that he was nothing but Blood. The Knight feeling himſelf wounded, cryed out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in, reſcued the Knight out of Orſon's Hands, and ſaid, Fair Knight, you have offered great wrong to ſmite a poor Wild-man on this rude manner, who can ſpeak never a word. With that, the Proud Knight began thus roughly to anſwer Valentine: Proud Miſcreant, why then doſt thou not ſalute me? and therewith drew forth a Glaive, thinking to have ſmitten him; Valentine ſeeing the Blow, drew forth his Sword, and ſtruck at the Proud Knight with ſuch violence, that he ſtruck him dead, and ſaid unto him; Hereafter learn thou to ſalute Men in a more friendly manner. The Proud

Knight being dead, his Men fled with all the haste they could unto Aquitain, bearing Tydings of their Master's Death. Duke Savary hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cousin.

Amongst the rest, Valentine understood of the lamentation that was for the Death of the Proud Knight beside the Fountain: whereupon he suddenly mounted on Horse-back, and entred the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgesses house of the same City, whereby it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had slain his Cousin. And the Duke commanded that Valentine and his Brother Orson should be brought before him: so being come into the presence of the Duke, he began on this manner; Friend (quoth he) of whence are you? What Prince do you serve? and whether be ye Knights, or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a Knight, and owe my duty and service to the famous King Pepin of France. Then said the Duke unto him; You have slain my Cousin: 'Tis true (said Valentine) and so I should have done, had it been my own Kinsman, for he was of so high a Stomach, that he disdained to speak to any Man, and smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a Stranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Green Knight, as also to behold that beauteous Lady Fezon, whom the whole World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of Equity, for Strangers to pass up and down in safety: Consider, I have shewed you the cause of my coming: When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him; Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cousin hath come by this, more by Pride, than Courage; I am right sorrowful, and so I pass it over, and pardon the Deed. But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to combat the Green Knight; come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventured: Moreover, that you may see that you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, and new arrived for the Love of the Lady Fezon, and to try their Valour against the said Green Knight their Enemy. Go, I say, to my Palace, salute my Daughter, as my Custom is to Strangers, before they adventure their Persons in Battel with the Green Knight, and having presented your selves before her in the sign of Love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, (quoth Valentine) I shall be ready to do all Rites and Customs belonging to this place; and besides, I will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command me. This Conference ended, the

Duke

Duke went into the Caſtle, accompanyed with Valentine and Orſon. Having entred the Hall where the Knights were aſſembled, Valentine beheld the Lady ſitting amongſt them, and making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at laſt he ſaluted her thus: Lady, you whoſe Beauty and Fame is bruited through the World, the Gods preſerve thee from the Green Knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your ſuperexcellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it pleaſe you to underſtand, that Pepin the Mighty King of France, hath ſent me hither to preſent unto you the moſt Noble man that liveth on the earth; wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man nor any weapon, albeit he cannot ſpeak: wherefore I aſſure you that the Green Knight is not able to withſtand his mighty force, nor make any reſiſtance againſt him, Sir (quoth the Lady) I yield unto the King of France thouſands of thanks, as alſo to you that have taken ſuch pains to preſent ſuch a one before me: But ſay, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better cloathed, for methinks he is of an excellent perſon, well formed, ſtrait, and of a hardy countenance; and if he were waſhed and bathed in ſome excellent Liquor, his fleſh would be both white and ſoft. Lady (quoth Valentine) he never wore Garment till it was very lately, and then I cauſed this Jacket you ſee him wear, to be made fitting to his body: Moreover, I aſſure you, that when he came firſt into Paris, he came like a Wild, Savage, and naked Man, and his fleſh was ſo hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was ſpeaking theſe words, Fezon beheld him very wiſhly, for ſhe was in love with him in heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to ſpeak unto her, Lady, for my ſelf I muſt ſay ſomething alſo, therefore, know this, that only for the love of you I have ventured my ſelf in this Climate, to ſee if fortune will ſo much favour me, that I may bear you away from all comers, by force of arms, and yet fair Lady, one thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my ſelf, that I will never return again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green Knight, and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered, or ſuffer Death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas, Knight ſaid the Lady, put not your ſelf in danger for my ſake, for methinks it is folly in any man, to endanger himſelf for the good of another: Again, there be many valiant Knights have miſcarried in ſeeking my love, and I the unhappieſt living, to ſee theſe unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to accompliſh: Why then, fair Knight, God be

thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, and Orson the other, also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great Feastings. Being set at the Table, Fezon still fixed her eye most on Orson, and Orson upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing Love-looks one to another, with exceeding gracious aspects: now in the midst of all these Feastings, the Green Knight (as his custom was) came thundring at the Gates, only to have a sight of the beauteous Lady Fezon, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions between him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawfull for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying: Valiant Duke of Aquitain, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my Palace, fifteen valiant Knights that mean to try their fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said the Green Knight, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady Fezon: Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Herewithal the Green Knight entred the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another, at last when he had gone through them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merry, for to morrows day shall be your last; and know that it will fall out to all your shares to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served.

Valentine well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these vaunts might well have been smothered in thy breast, for I tell thee, this Day is come hither a Knight that will hold thee tack, more than any that ever yet encountred thee, and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead Corps a Prey for ravenous Beasts. Now Orson understood that Valentine spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the Green Knight by whom so many valiant men had lost their lives: insomuch, that he saluted him with a fierce Visage, and whetting his Teeth leapt from the Table, and taking the Green Knight by the middle, threw him upon his neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that advantage, espying a wall, threw the Green Knight with such violence against the same, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead, and so set him down again at the Table, as before, and in a laughing gesture made signs, that he would bear upon his Neck three such as the Green Knight.

At

At this ſudden Action of Orſon, all the Knights there aſſembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, ſaid, Now is he come indeed, that ſhall be the overthrow of the Green Knight; But we cannot chuſe but lament the woful chance that ſhall befal the Lady Fezon, for he cannot ſpeak, and yet is worthy of all honour amongſt the valiantest. The Lady on the other ſide, beholding his valour, was inſtantly overcome with the love of Orſon, that only he conquered her heart, and left all the reſt hopeleſs of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of Courage, began thus to ſay in the aforeſaid preſence: Lords, this Wild man hath deceived my truſt, for he came upon me unawares, without ſaying any word: but I think good to let you underſtand, that in the morning I ſhall be better provided: and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet on purpoſe, higher and ſtronger than for any that have been vanquiſhed by me; and thereon I will hang his Beaſtly Corps, for Beaſts and Birds to make their Prey.

CHAP. XXI.

How Orſon encountred the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: Alſo how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORſon perceiving the Green Knight diſpleaſed, and to threaten him, began as faſt to chatter with his lips, making ſigns that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his hood, and threw it on the ground as his Gage: which Valentine ſeeing, ſpake thus to the Green Knight: Sir, the Wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage, whereof, if your ſtomach ſerve, I adviſe you to take it up: Hereat the Green Knight fretted ſo exceedingly, that he replied never a word, Duke Savary being preſent, ſaid unto him, Sir Knight, I well perceive that the Battel will grow ſtrong between the Wild-man and you, and I think that he will hold you tough play: wherefore if you chance to conquer him alſo, you may well report of your valour throughout the World, for he hath tryed ſome part of his courage already; and in vanquiſhing him, you need not ſtand in fear of any. The Green Knight hereat more and more enraged, ſwore by all the Gods, that e're the morrows Sun was ſet, he would

try

try the utmoſt of his ſtrength, for he ſhould never return again from the Field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the reſt: and with theſe words left the Caſtle, and betook him to his Pavillion.

He being departed, the reſt of the Knights ſtill remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy, and ſaying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green Knight ſhould meet with his Match. On the other ſide, Fame had ſo ſpread abroad the worthy act of Orſon the ſavage, upon the Green Knight, that multitudes of people reſorted into the Palace to ſee and behold him; inſomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be ſhut againſt them. Orſon perceiving the people ſo abundantly to approach, and hearing the noiſe, leapt up into a Windows to behold the People, ſo that they willing to ſee him, and he deſirous to ſee them, at night they all departed to their houſe. The people being departed, and ſuppper ended, they paſſed the reſt of the night in merriments, and ſo to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber, went to bed, making ſigns to Orſon to lye down by him; but he not regarding his kindneſs, laid him down upon the ground, according to his wonted uſe, and ſo paſſed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine and Orſon went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other Knights, holding a diſpute among themſelves who ſhould firſt fight with the Green Knight. At laſt ſtood up a worthy Knight of France (called Galeram) and ſaid, Lords, ſo you be pleaſed, I am the man intend the firſt Tryal; to this they agreed, and preſently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy; and ſhe to requite his kindneſs, gave him free leave, wiſhing the Gods to preſerve and keep him in all danger, ſo that he may return as Conqueror: The Knight moſt humbly thanked her, and ſo took Horſe, and haſted him towards the Tent of the Green Knight. The Green Knight perceiving from far his approach, ſet Spurs to his Horſe, and encountred the Famous Knight Galeram ſo fiercely, that he ſmote him off the Horſe to the Earth; the Green Knight ſeeing him on the ground, ſuddenly lighted from his Horſe, and took off the Helm from his Head: Galeram fearing nothing but preſent death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pity, he firſt deſpoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the reſt before. Orſon perceiving that Galeram was put to death, made ſigns with his hands that he would fight with him preſently, not letting him have any reſpite: but Valentine anſwered him again by ſigns, that he ſhould withdraw himſelf for a while; for he would firſt go to try his own ſtrength on him: Hereupon he preſently put himſelf in Arms, and being armed, took

his

his way towards the beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him; being come before her, ſhe grew wonderous ſorrowful, and yet at laſt ſhe ſpake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Knight, what madneſs is this in you, to adventure your ſelf for the love of ſuch an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invocate the Gods to aid and aſſiſt thee againſt thine and mine enemy; and ſo farewell.

Leave thus taken of the Lady and the reſt of the Knights, Valentine mounted his Horſe, to take his way toward the Green Knight. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight who was likewiſe enamoured with the love of the Lady, and thus began to ſay to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and ſuffer me to go firſt. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your deſire, go and return with Victory. This Knight's name was Tyris, born in Savoy, a man of great Birth and Living, but riotouſly had run through his means, leaving himſelf little, ſave only his Horſe and Arms: Having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he alſo took leave of the Lords there aſſembled, and ſo departed unto the Tent of the Green Knight; the Green Knight perceiving Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. Tyris ſeeing him, ſaid: Sir, preſently mount thy Horſe and defend thy ſelf, for I breath out defiance againſt thee; the Green Knight hearing him ſay ſo, called for his Horſe which was preſently brought unto him; and putting his foot into the ſtirrup, ſuddenly ſeated himſelf in the Saddle, and betook him to his Spear and green Shield, preparing to take their courſe at each other; but at the firſt encounter, the Green Knight ran ſo furiouſly that he ſmote Tyris quite through the Body with his Spear, ſo that he fell down ſtark dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his neck, and hanged him up amongſt the reſt.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris, was wonderful ſorrowful, yet taking courage, he recommended himſelf to the Gods: having thus done, he puts Spurs to his Horſe, and took his way ſpeedily towards the Tent whereas the Green Knight remained. When the Green Knight eſpied him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the reſt; wherefore he called unto him, ſaying, Knight, give ear unto this I now ſhall ſay; ſeeſt thou yonder Tree? there ſhalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (ſaid Valentine) you have Servants enough of your own, ſend them, for by me it ſhall never be fetched: By my Law (quoth the Green Knight) you ſhall either bring me the Shield, or elſe know this, you ſhall never conquer me. When Valen-

tine

time had well considered these words he spake as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the Green Knight, in an angry mood, said thus unto him, Go fetch thy Shield thy self, for I cannot have it, wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastned it: and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Knight) shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee thither; it was, for that this shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such vertue, that no man, be he never so strong, can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome: and for the doubt I stood in of thee, therefore I sent thee thither, now my doubt is satisfied; and therefore I advise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy self: for seeing thee so fair a Knight, I am forced to pity thee, and take no pleasure in thy death, from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further to the end thou shouldest not think I uttered these words to abuse thy patience, know this: That there is none living that can banquish me, except first, he be the Son of a King, and next, such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman. Now if thou best such a one, thou mayest overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own days by an untimely death. At these words Valentine took little pleasure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man: but seeing that he was come to that Enterprize, he would not return till he had allayed his strength against him: and therefore with a loud voice he spake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted Knight, I well understand I am not the man by whom you shall be conquered, yet whosoever I am, I will not depart hence untill I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Knight) then thou hast some secret Treason to work against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy death wilfully: but e're I part with thee, I will make thee know the price of this thy rashness: and therewithal leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his Servants to bring unto him a box of pretious Balm, the vertue of it was such, that what wound soever he received, though never so mortal, it had power instantly to heal up the breach, having had proof thereof before.

After he had received the Box of Ointment, he suddenly put spurs to his Horse, and couching his Spear in his rest, both ran their course so furiously, that their Spears brake in many pieces: And they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords, whereat Valentine behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the

Green

Green Knight ſo fell a ſtroak, that he cut him through his Armour. inſomuch that the Blood iſſued out in great abundance. The Green Knight feeling himſelf wounded, lift up his arm to fetch a blow, that he ſtruck away a great piece of his Thigh, and having thus wounded him, ſaid unto him, You may ſee I can wield a Sword as well as you. I told you before, that you would fall under my hand, and anon I ſhall be fain to hang your dead Corps on a tree, as I have done the reſt of the Knights as came before you. Pagan (ſaid Valentine) vaunt not thy ſelf overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thy ſelf. and therewith he gave the Green Knight ſuch a blow, that he ſmote away a great quarter of his Shield, and the Green Knight, at the ſame encounter, ſtake his Sword upon the Helm of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his Horſe: Valentine being always valiant, ſuddenly recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan ſeeing him riſe up, drew out a ſharp-pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he ſeeing it come, ſtarted a little aſide; ſo that it miſſed him. The Green Knight being thus unarmed of his Weapons, turned about his Horſe, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground, and ſeeing fit opportunity, cut off his Horſe feet, ſo that both he and his Horſe came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth he ſuddenly aroſe again, and then they were both together by ſtrength of arms holding one another But to be ſhort, the bickering was ſo fierce between them, that they were both ſore wounded

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before ſpoken of. This fight continued ſo long that the day began to ſhut in, and both grew extream weary. The Green Knight was ſore vexed that he could not overcome Valentine. and though he were even ſpent in wearineſs, yet he proudly bare it out, ſaying, Knight, give over, for I perceive thy wearineſs, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee Go, return again to Aquitain, and reſt there this night, and report that there never encountred me ſo valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou ſhalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind Offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and ſore wounded: So going to his Horſe, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City: When Duke Savary and his Lords ſaw Valentine return, they were joyful, and received him in great honour. among the reſt there aſſembled was Orſon, who ran and caught him in his arms, and kiſſed him. Being

ing come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what tydings from the Green Knight? Sir (saith Valentine) he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man living able to vanquish him. Valentine (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, for never did any return as yet, but all have perished under the hand of the Green Knight wherefore you have proved your self a valiant Knight. Gracious Duke (said Valentine) of my Conquest over him I can make but small boast, but to morrow there is appointed a new tryal of Manhood, and the Victory may light upon whom the Gods please to favour. Having thus ended conference with the Duke, Valentine was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with life from the Combat of the Green Knight. By this time Supper drew on, and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused Valentine to be set on his left hand, at the upper end of the Board, for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the Green Knight rested in his Pavillion, where we will leave him, and speak of Valentine, who being in his Chamber, made many complaints.

CHAP. XXII.

How Valentine took good Advice, and sent Orson on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight; and how Orson overcame him.

VAlentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled wondrously as he lay in Bed; still bethinking him on what had hapned him the day before. At last when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolve on this Conclusion. I am not, neither can be that Kings Son that should overcome the Green Knight; for I can neither remove the Shield he sent me for neither was I nourished without the Breast of Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering whereupon to rely. At last he began thus to think: What if Orson should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of Fortune's wrack? why? It shall be so. The break of the day appearing, he arose from his weary Bed, and coming unto

unto Orſon, he told him by ſigns, how that he ſhould put on his Armour, and take his Horſe, and make towards the Green Knight's Pavillion to fight with him.

Orſon underſtanding by ſigns his hearts intent, leaped and danced up and down the Hall joyfully, making ſigns to Valentine again, that the Pagan Knight, ſhould never eſcape his hands, and denying his Horſe and Arms, deſire nothing of him ſave only a Club of Wood, ſuch a one as he was accuſtomed to weild, and ſhaking his head, made ſigns that he would have no other Armor againſt the Pagan Knight. Valentine ſeeing him ſo reſolute, gave him to underſtand by ſigns, that he muſt put on the ſame Armor, and ride on the ſame Horſe that Valentine brought out of France: for that the Knight ſhould know no other but that it was Valentine that came againſt him. The Wild-man underſtanding the ſubtilty intended, agreed to all that Valentine commanded him. So Orſon was armed with the ſame Armor and Horſe which Valentine had imployed the day before. Orſon being thus armed (contrary to his accuſtomed manner) ſeemed a right perſonable Creature, and made many ſigns that he would overcome the Green Knight e're the noontide of the day, without either mercy or pity; and in theſe ſigns he was ſo earneſt, that he cauſed great laughter throughout all the aſſembly then preſent. Orſon thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him ſigns to ſtand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the Green Knight with him, either alive or dead. After this manner departed Orſon, but before he took his Horſe, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, ſo returning back to the Palace, where the Lady ſat accompanied with her Train, and eſpying her, would have run unto her and kiſſed her, for by ſigns he gave her to underſtand, that for the love of her he would preſently fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady in a ſmile, returned back again (in ſign) that ſhe loved him exceeding well; wiſhing him to bear himſelf valiantly, and at his return back again, ſhe would grant him her love. Thus having taken his leave of the Lady Fezon, and the reſt there aſſembled, he betook him to his Horſe, and being gone from the Duke's Palace, there was nothing ſo much talked generally throughout the City, as the Wild-man was gone to Combat with the Green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orſon came unto the Pavillion of the Green Knight: and without any words ſmote the top thereof with his Spear, ſignifying Defiance. The Green Knight taking this ruſtick ſalutation in great ſcorn, ſwore by Mahomet, that he would Ferter his pride e're the evening

Sun took rest, and therewithal mounted on his Steed and couching his Spear in his Rest, he entred the Field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readiness, seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more Courage, they encountred with such force, that both Horse and Man fell to the earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered their feet, drew forth their Swords, and laid on at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow, that he cut the circle of Gold upon his Helm, and smote a great piece of his Shield quite off, and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the outrage of the stroak, his Sword fell out of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce than before, rowling his eyes, and shaking his head, at last with his Sword he took the Green such a pat upon his head, that he entred the flesh, and bare a great part thereof afore him, and his Sword sliding off his head, took him on the arm so powerfully, that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green Knight having his former Ballamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, sith he could heal himself so quickly.

Upon this Orson threw away all his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly run upon the Green Knight, and caught him fast by the arms so strongly, that he cast him on the ground: Being under him, Orson took off his Helm, and held him so down, that the Green Knight did yield to his mercy; Orson nothing regarding his submission would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in presently to his rescue, by riding post, to see the end of the Combat. Being come, he made signs to Orson that he should not kill him, which Orson obeyed, but still kept him in subjection. And at last Valentine began to speak to the Green Knight saying, Proud Knight, you well see that you are in the hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for look how you have done to the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree, so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest branch of all above the rest. Alas (quoth the Green Knight) you seem to be a man of pity, furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto you is, to spare my life. No, (quoth Valentine) that shall I not except upon condition; First, that you renounce your Paganism: and Secondly, go with me into France to King Pepin, telling him, that by Valentine and Orson you were overcome in single Combat. To all these Conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath to perform whatsoever you have already spoken.

Then

Then Valentine made ſigns to Orſon, that he ſhould riſe, which he readily obeyed, but ſo that he left him nothing about him to make any further reſiſtance. Being upon his feet, he ſpake thus to Valentine: Sir, it was you that combated againſt me yeſterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this day alſo; but I ſee I am conquered by the man, that in the Duke's Palace threw me on the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very ſame. Why then (quoth the Green Knight.) I ſhall reveal unto thee one ſecret more, and I beſeech thee grant unto me my requeſt; ſend this Knight, that hath conquered me unto yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield there faſtned, then I am well aſſured he is the man that ſhould conquer me, or elſe there is none living can triumph in my requeſt. Hereupon Valentine made a ſign unto Orſon to fetch away that Shield, who did as he appointed him, and coming near the Tree, he ſtretched forth his arm to take it down, and ſuddenly it leaped into his hand, and ſo he brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he ſaw Orſon have the Shield, his heart ſmote againſt his ſides, and throwing himſelf at his feet, would have killed them: but Orſon receiving ſigns from Valentine to the contrary, would not ſuffer

him

him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he spake thus: Alas, I of all others, owe unto you all my service, and all reverence: For now I am assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confess that by conquering me, you have won unto your self Everlasting Fame.

Moreover, this assure your self, that he that conquers me, can be no less than a Son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman: and that this shall appear to be truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister Clerimond, for she hath a Head of Brass that telleth her the Adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation shall befall. Likewise that this Head shall continue speaking untill such time as the most worthiest Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth, and he being once entred, the said Head should lose his vertue, and is the only man to have my Sister Clerimond to Wife; wherefore (fair Knight) these things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would Wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and most Renowned Knight in the whole World.

CHAP. XXIII.

Orson having conquered the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be Christned, and sending him to King Pepin, had knowledge of his Father and Mother by means of the Green Knight.

The Green Knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto Valentine a Ring of Gold, upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring Valentine accepted, and the Green Knight yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards France, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. Valentine having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended to him. After this, the Green Knight (by consent) was crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great state: presently upon this league of friendship concluded, he gave commandment throughout all his Host, that every man should depart away from the confines of Aquitain, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke Savary's Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, Valentine and Orson took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of Aquitain,

Aquitain, whereat was no little joy; and the Duke with all his Lords, received him with great triumph into the City. The Ezæn Knight being thus brought as a Priſoner to the Duke, began to ſay on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honor unto the Knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to underſtand for certain, that he can be no leſs than Son to a King; and alſo, that he never ſucked Womans Breaſt, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for ſo it was ever ſaid by the Brazen Head that ſtandeth in the Chamber of my Siſter Clerimond. Quoth the Duke, well may this carry ſome likelyhood of truth, for he hath borne himſelf very valiantly againſt you, wherefore I think it my part to honor him with my utmoſt endeavours.

By this time is this worthy Train entered the Duke's Palace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughters preſence, and then he ſaid unto her, Daughter, behold here the Ezeen Knight, that hath for your love made ſpoil of my Country, and I was no way able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Knight that Valentine hath brought along with him, from the Court of King Pepin, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears: wherefore this is my deſire, that as he hath conquered yours and mine Enemy, ſo he may alſo conquer your love, whereunto I right willingly agree that you ſhall have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus ſaid, the Lady anſwered for her ſelf in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reaſon why I ſhould refuſe, but do ſubmit my ſelf to your diſpoſe, for if I ſhould do otherwiſe, it were in me great diſobedience. And again my Lord, you know promiſe is already paſt, that whoſoever he was that could vanquiſh the Pagan Knight, ſhould for his labour receive me for his Wife: Now my Lord, the day of my deliverance is come, ſo then (according to your promiſe) you muſt give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouſe, otherwiſe I ſhall make void the Edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought falſe in your promiſes. Daughter (quoth the Duke) you have ſpoken right graciouſly, and your anſwer pleaſeth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us; wherefore it were not amiſs to know of the Conqueror Knight whether he will have you. If he agree unto this match, I ſhall give him in Dowry half my Country of Aquitain: hereupon Valentine ſtanding by, demanded of Orſon by ſigns, whether he would have the fair Lady Fezon to Wife: Who anſwered again by ſigns, that he would never have other: Then cauſed the Duke to be brought before him a Prieſt, who then contracted them; and ſo their time was paſſed with many diſports. Theſe things

thus

thus ended, Orſon made ſigns unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the uſe of his tongue, and that his Companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you ſhall hear more hereafter.

CHAP. XXIV.

How the ſame night that Orſon was made ſure to the Lady Fezon, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the charge ſhe gave unto him.

The day being paſt with great Banquetings and Solemnity, wherein Fezon was allured unto Orſon, the night approached, and every man betook him to his reſt: Amongſt the reſt, Valentine and Orſon were

lodged moſt richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the Apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, ſaying

ſaying, Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou ſpeedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orſon, by whom the Green Knight hath been banquiſhed, and without further delay, get thee into the Caſtle of Ferragus, there you ſhall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou ſhalt underſtand of whence thou art deſcended.

This ſtrange Viſion drove Valentine into a thouſand fears, and in great melancholly paſſed he away the night: the day being broken, he cauſed Orſon to ariſe, and being ready, they both haſted them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barons attending on him, and amongſt the reſt there preſent the Green Knight. Not long after entred the Duke, being entred, the Green Knight took an occaſion to give him the time of the day, and began to ſpeak unto him on this manner: Moſt renowned Duke, I freely confeſs my ſelf banquiſhed and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlaſting peace with you upon condition that you cauſe me to be Baptized. Knight, (ſaid the Duke,) well have you ſaid, I grant your requeſt. When the Prieſt was come that ſhould baptize him, Valentine being preſent, began thus to ſay: Lords, and the reſidue here aſſembled, may it pleaſe the valiant Duke to grant me one Boon, which is this, that the name of this Knight be called Pepin, it is the name of the moſt mighty King of France, that nouriſhed and foſtred me even from my Cradle. The Duke conſented unto Valentine's demand, ſo he was called Pepin; after the Baptiſm, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orſon for to Wed his Daughter, the beauteous Lady Fezon, but Valentine not allowing thereof, made this excuſe, that both he and Orſon had vowed to go to Jeruſalem, ere they did attempt any other action, after the Conqueſt of the Green Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuſe, gave them leave, upon this condition, that Orſon ſhould take an Oath to return again into Aquitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed. The ſame hour alſo, the Green Knight took leave of the Duke of Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promiſed Faith to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for the Ring that he had promiſed, who gave it unto him, ſaying, Whatſoever he be that beareth this about him, ſhall never ſtand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of falſe accuſation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger; ſo Orſon and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Caſtle of Ferragus: And the Green Knight likewiſe took leave

thus ended, Orson made signs unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the use of his tongue, and that his Companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you shall hear more hereafter.

CHAP. XXIV.

How the same night that Orson was made sure to the Lady Fezon, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the charge she gave unto him.

The day being past with great Banquetings and Solemnity, wherein Fezon was assured unto Orson, the night approached, and every man betook him to his rest: Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson were

lodged most richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the Apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, saying

ſaying, Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou ſpeedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orſon, by whom the Green Knight hath been vanquiſhed, and without further delay, get thee into the Caſtle of Ferragus, there you ſhall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou ſhalt underſtand of whence thou art deſcended.

This ſtrange Viſion drove Valentine into a thouſand fears, and in great melancholly paſſed he away the night: the day being broken, he cauſed Orſon to ariſe, and being ready, they both haſted them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barons attending on him, and amongſt the reſt there preſent the Green Knight. Not long after entred the Duke, being entred, the Green Knight took an occaſion to give him the time of the day, and began to ſpeak unto him on this manner: Moſt renowned Duke, I freely confeſs my ſelf vanquiſhed and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlaſting peace with you upon condition that you cauſe me to be Baptized. Knight, (ſaid the Duke,) well have you ſaid, I grant your requeſt. When the Prieſt was come that ſhould baptize him, Valentine being preſent, began thus to ſay: Lords, and the reſidue here aſſembled, may it pleaſe the valiant Duke to grant me one Boon, which is this, that the name of this Knight be called Pepin, it is the name of the moſt mighty King of France, that nouriſhed and kolred me even from my Cradle. The Duke conſented unto Valentine's demand, ſo he was called Pepin; after the Baptiſm, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orſon for to Wed his Daughter, the beauteous Lady Fezon, but Valentine not allowing thereof, made this excuſe, that both he and Orſon had vowed to go to Jeruſalem, ere they did attempt any other action, after the Conqueſt of the Green Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuſe, gave them leave, upon this condition, that Orſon ſhould take an Oath to return again into Aquitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed. The ſame hour alſo, the Green Knight took leave of the Duke of Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promiſed Faith to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for the Ring that he had promiſed, who gave it unto him, ſaying, Whatſoever he be that beareth this about him, ſhall never ſtand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of falſe accuſation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger; ſo Orſon and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Caſtle of Ferragus; and the Green Knight likewiſe took leave

for France, to yield himself to King Pepin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Lady Bellisant, was arrived at King Pepin's Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King he wondred at this his unlook'd for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Worthy King (said Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperor Alexander, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her misery.

CHAP. XXV.

How King Pepin came to the knowledge that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews, by the report of Blandiman: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto Valentine.

BLandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand of him where his Sister was? Blandiman replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any: But worthy King if you make doubt of her Loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight the quarrel, to prove her Honest. Nay (quoth the King) I have seen tryal enough thereof already, by the downfal of the Arch-Priest, also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any tydings of her; and indeed that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was repulsed the Kingdom; neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that burden. My Lord, (quoth Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my Lady laid her great Belly in the Forrest of Orleance, and while she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman, e're I could return, she was delivered of two fair Sons, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Bear into the Wood, she never wist whether; but she followed the Bear so long, till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the Ground. I coming

coming to her, took her up in my arms, and comforted her ſo well as I could, till being ſomewhat recobered, in woful Sighs ſhe unfolded unto me the whole manner of the loſs of her Child by the Bear: and for the other ſhe had left it under the Tree: I hearing her ſay ſo, haſted towards the Tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child neither. And thus (worthy King) have I related unto you the whole ſtory of your Siſter and her two Infants in the Foreſt: and other tydings have I none, but this, that I am that Blandiman that you gave unto your Siſter to attend her, when ſhe married the Emperor Alexander. The King giving ear unto this Tale, at laſt ſaid: Alas Blandiman, thy words ſtrike me into a thouſand fears, what ſhould be become of my Siſter: but ſeeing thou canſt tell no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou haſt told me. My Lord (quoth he) it was even that day you met me in the Foreſt of Orleance, and I related unto you the pitious tydings of your Siſters baniſhment. This ſtruck the King into ſuch an admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, and then preſently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in the Foreſt, and how by the ſame Valentine, Orſon was conquered in the ſame Wood. Then he began to think on the ſtory that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that theſe were the two Babes brought forth by his Siſter, wherefore he ſent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them underſtand what Blandiman had declared, ſaying, My Lords, I have long time nouriſhed and brought up in my Court two poor Children, and now it doth plainly appear they are Sons to an Emperor, and my near kinſmen: Valentine the one, whom I found in the Foreſt of Orleance, brought forth there by my Siſter Belliſant, in the time of her exile; and Orſon who was likewiſe vanquiſhed by Valentine, to be his Natural Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of Greece. At theſe Tydings all the Court was wondrous joyful, ſave only Haufray and Henry, who in outward ſhew ſeemed glad, but were in their hearts very ſorrowful, for above all other they deſired the death of Valentine, that next him they might work their wills on their younger Brother Charlemain, againſt whom they chiefly oppoſed themſelves, as hereafter will more plainly appear,

But to return back again to Blandiman, who hearing the King ſpeak ſo much of the two Children, demanded of the King if he knew in what Country they were: Why (ſaid the King) one of theſe I have brought up in my Court a long time, in ſuch Faſhion, that he is become a right valiant Knight, and by his Valour hath Conquered his Brother,

being a Wild-man, living in the Wood at Orleance like a Beast, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their way towards Aquitain, to fight with a right Worthy Champion, called the Green Knight, and since their departure I never heard what became of them, Sir, said Blandiman, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well; that near Aquitain I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the Green Knight, (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at Paris at the King's Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the King he saluted him with great reverence. The King seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Knight replied again on this manner. Honourable King know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Knight, that for the love of the Lady Fezon, Daughter to the Duke of Aquitain, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and having him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months, upon these Conditions; that if within that time he found not forth a Knight that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his Daughter Fezon to Wife; on the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further Damage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by divers valiant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and there still hanged upon a Tree: At last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named Valentine, and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tyred, and weary: The next morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow Orson, armed in Valentine's Armour entred the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addressed out my self against him, but little availed my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon us, and rescued me, upon Condition: First, that I should forsake

Mahomet:

Mahomet: Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your command, and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is my name.

The King having heard all this long story from the Green Knight, made this answer in the presence of all the Barons: Welcome to us, and of your Company we are right glad, live with us in our Court, and be second, for I freely grant you your life, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Knights were, that had conquered him? Marry (quoth the Green Knight.) I left them both at Aquitain with the Valiant Duke Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of Blandiman and the Green Knight, King Pepin had perfect Intelligence of his beauteous Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these tydings hapned, King Pepin made a solemn Vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece, to tell the Emperor of these gladsome tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

CHAP. XXVI.

How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear these Tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had belcagured Constantinople.

KIng Pepin having put himself in a readiness to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much Feasting. Upon a day as he sate at Dinner with the Pope in his Palace Pontifical, there came tydings unto him, that the Great Soldan of Egypt had besieged Constantinople. The Knight that brought this message, after his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazins with much power have besieged and wrongfully overrun Constantinople; and I am charged to crave your aid against these Ene-

mies

nies of Christendom. When the Pope understood these ill-welcome tydings, he was driven into a wondrous dump, not knowing any present way to send them relief: but King Pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this business, for I request but a competent Summ of Money and Men, and I shall lead them to Constantinople with such a Couragious heart, that I shall put the Souldan and his Forces to the worst, such an inveterate hatred bear I against these Pagan Devils. The Pope hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his couragious heart, and said unto him: Right Christian King seeing thou dost proffer thy self in Person to undertake this Service, I shall with all convenient speed provide for a business of such import. Presently hereupon all things being prepared, with an Army of Thirty thousand Romans, King Pepin departed, and as soon as possible he could, he arrived at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Soldans Army, betaking themselves into the City, keeping the same against all the force of the Pagans.

The Emperor himself was forced to retire into the City, and being cooped up in so small a Compass, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Bellisant, whom he had cruelly banished; always fearing that she was dead, for it was now full twenty Winters past, since the time of her exile. By this time is King Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Pavillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his Forces into Battel-array. The Soldan having knowledge of his arrival, and also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Pavillion, and being set down in his magnificence, there came unto him certain of his Camp, fearfully and doubtfully, saying thus unto him: Great and mighty Soldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately arrived to the number of two hundred thousand Romans, to bid us present Battle, under the conduct of Pepin King of France: Wherefore it only resteth now, that you take sudden advice how to prevent and resist these Forces: Peace Screetch Owls (quoth the Soldan) be not afraid, for you are deluded by some false report; the whole Roman Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army. Go on I say couragiously, for I swear by Mahomet, ere long I shall bring under my subjection, both the Kingdom of Rome and France also: wherefore call up your troops, plant them, and put your Squadrons in readiness to receive them.

The

The morrow following, King Pepin ſet his Army in order of Battel, fiercely to aſſault the Pagan Hoſt, and ſecretly ſent a Letter to the Emperor, being in the City; whereby he requeſted the Emperor, that they within the City ſhould put themſelves in readineſs, and iſſue out upon the Pagans on that ſide, for King Pepin and his companies would receive them on the other ſide, then being all encompaſſed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperor received theſe Letters joyfully, and did as King Pepin commanded them, and iſſued forth of the City, bidding battel to the Sarazens. They were no ſooner entred the Field, but they perceived the Army of King Pepin marching on with Banners diſplayed, and noiſe of Trumpets ſounding in moſt couragious manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Soldan calling to him two of his hardieſt Men of War, commanded them ſecretly to go through the Hoſt of the Chriſtians, and if it were poſſible, to number them. Theſe two did as the Soldan commanded, but coming near the Hoſt of King Pepin, the Green Knight eſpying them coming down a little Hill, drawing somewhat nearer, he diſcerned they were Sarazens, and preſently putting Spurs to his Horſe, ran againſt them with ſuch fury, that his Spear brake upon his thigh; the the Sarazens ſeeing him run ſo fiercely, did not fly, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight juſted againſt the two Sarazens, and having ſlain the one, the other fled: and how King Pepin and his Hoſts was lodged within Conſtantinople.

THE Green Knight having recovered a new Spear, he ran fiercely againſt both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place, ſmote him to the Earth, ſo that he never roſe, then making againſt the other, he gave him ſuch a wound that he ſuddenly fled away: King Pepin ſeeing this accident, preſently aſſailed the Soldans Hoſt, and Myllon Daugler ſlew the King of Aquile, and three other, ere he gave over the Field, with many and divers other worthy deeds of Chivalry: The Soldan ſeeing him ſo play the Devil in his Hoſt, cryed out, to follow

Daugler

Daugler that had made such havock: So they did as he commanded, pursuing him so close on both sides, that at length they cut off one of his Horses thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished, had not the Green Knight (maugre all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the Preis, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly horsed him, and brought him clean out of Danger. After this they both joyned together in such furious outrage, that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this Battle, and endured long, but King Pepin and his men made great slaughter amongst the Pagans: but notwithstanding all this their valour, they had lost the day, had it not been for the Emperor, that with his Host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and made amongst them a bloody slaughter. The King seeing the courage of the Emperor so great, gathered together again his scattered Troops, and entred into the Battle again with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the King came unto the sight of the Emperor, he said unto him: Great Prince, shew thy self right valiant, and this day, e're night, I shall tell thee tydings of the Lady Bellisant.

These words added fresh Courage unto the Emperor, who cryed out to his men: Courage for Constantinople, and he that wins honour shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred into the thickest of the Battle; where he, King Pepin, and the Green Knight so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should ever escape a way alive, and therefore fearing the worst, betook themselves to flight. But their flight being espyed by the King of Sclavonia, who led the rear-ward of the Soldan, presently rushed in with his Troops, consisting of fifty thousand fighting men, making withal so great a shout, that it seemed by the sound thereof, their part got the better. The Emperor and the King perceiving their coming, wisely considered that their men were tyred and out-worn, and the Enemy fresh and lusty, sounded a Retreat, and retired themselves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Soldan seeing this, followed upon them, and strongly besieged the City round about, so that neither the Emperor nor the King could issue out thereof. Thus they abode till they were well nigh famished, thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine and Orion, who for the love of Clerimond, have adventured, as you have already heard.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *Valintine* and *Orſon* arrived at the ſtrong Caſtle, wherein fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents.

AFter many days travel, at laſt Valentine and Orſon lighted upon an Iſland, In which Iſland ſtood a Caſtle ſtrong and impregnable; the covering whereof was of ſhining mettal, glittering in the Sun, that it drave Valentine into ſuſpition that it was it, whereunto the Green Kt. had directed him to have a ſight of the fair Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh way towards the Caſtle, and at laſt entred into this Iſland by one of the Ports thereof. Being entered, he demanded who was the owner of that Caſtle which appeared ſo ſumptuous to the eye? Anſwer was returned, that the Caſtle was in the keeping of the fair Lady Clerimond, Siſter unto the Gyant Farragus, and builded by a mighty man in ſubſtance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongſt all other his excellent works done in this Caſtle, he cauſed one Chamber to be richly adorned, of the which Chamber more ſhall be ſpoken of it in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto Valentine, amongſt other things, that in the Chamber ſtood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar ſtood a Head of Brass, compoſed a long time before, by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of ſuch an excellent compoſition, that it gave anſwer to any thing that was demanded: Valentine hearing this ſtrange Relation of the Caſtle, was right glad, for now he was verily perſwaded that this muſt needs be the very Caſtle he had ſo long time ſought, and wherein the Green Kt. told him he ſhould find his Siſter, ſo highly praiſed of all Nations for her excellent Beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left queſtioning any further, and went on his way, accompanied with Orſon, to ſee if he could get entrance into this Caſtle? By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were reſiſted by ten ſturdy Knights, that kept the Gate night and day.

When they saw Valentine and Orson make proffer to enter, they said unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, withdraw your selves back, for into this Castle entereth none, of what birth soever, without the leave and license of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why (quoth Valentine) go tell her, and ask whether it be her pleasure we enter or not? Hereupon one of them entred the Chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling unto her said: Lady, before your Gate standeth two Gallants, that would enter your Castle, they seem fierce and courageous, full of high Spirit, and men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion of our Country: Now fair Lady say, shall they have entrance? Descend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a Window to take a view of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, for I mean to question with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded, then Clerimond that was well languaged, leaned out of the Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto Valentine: What are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady, (quoth Valentine with an undaunted courage)

courage) I am a Kt. that travelleth this way and would gladly ſpeak with that Head of Brals that remaineth within this Caſtle, if it be your pleaſure, becauſe (as I underſtand) it reſolveth doubts. Kt. quoth the Lady, upon theſe terms you may not enter, but if you can bring me any certain ſigns from one of my Brethren, either from K. Ferragus, or the Græn Kt. Lord of Tartary, then you may freely enter this Caſtle; or by no other means, yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneſchal of this place, with whom you may run ſix courſes with your Spear, to try your valour; wherefore now be adviſed, either fetch me ſome certain tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in ſingle combat; as I have told you. Lady, quoth Valentine, againſt your Seneſchal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blows, than by entreats and fawning ſpeeches. This choice choſe Valentine, rather than to bewray the Ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the Græn Kt. to preſent to his Siſter Clerimond. The Lady ſeeing his reſolute hardneſs, ſuddenly fell in love with him, and preſently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brals ſtood, and ſaid unto it: what is that Kt. of courage that would ſo gladly enter this Caſtle? Lady, quoth the Head, of that Kt. you ſhall know nothing, until ſuch time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this anſwer ſeemed very ſorrowful, for ſhe was greatly in love with Valentine.

CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Caſtle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*: And how he juſted for the entrance, and overcame the Seneſhal.

CLerimond pondring in her mind the words of Valentine, being overcome with affection, ſaid on this manner: Ah! Valentine is valorous and beautiful, and if I have power over the Head of Brals, I ſhall never take other Husband than this Kt. Hereupon ſhe ſent for the Seneſhal, and told him that this Kt. would enter the Caſtle. The Seneſhal thereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be ſo hardy to attempt it, I ſhall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love.

Seneschal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently, and so he departed to put himself in Arms; being armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his rest, and withal issued out of the Gate in readiness. The Lady also got into a Window to behold the Combat. When Valentine saw the Seneschal to come toward him, he couched his spear, and putting spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their spears break in pieces: presently having a new supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground Horse and Man; but Valentine's Horse got up with his Master; Valentine being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneschal: Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no honour in conquering an enemy at advantage. Whereupon the Seneschal was freshly mounted, and new spears given them again: then took they a fresh carær, and herewithal Valentine so encountred him about the Head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man down upon the earth: The Seneschal feeling himself in danger, said thus unto Valentine, Sr. I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never

in

in my life found I a man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter this Caſtle at thy pleaſure, (only upon this condition, that you ſpeak not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Quoth Valentine thou haſt requeſted that which I will not grant, and know, it was for her love that I came hither, and though I never yet ſaw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have ſpoken with her, & alſo with the Brazen Head. The Lady all this while ſtanding at the Window, wondered what conference paſſed between theſe two Champions, and at laſt thus ſaid unto one of her Maidens: See how indiſcreet this Seneſchal is, to fight with ſuch a valiant Kt. who long ſince might have taken away his life. When Valentine ſaw the great pride of the Seneſchal, and that he ſtood it out with him being his Priſoner, he preſently run againſt him another courſe, & therewithal gave him ſo deadly a ſtroak, that he ran him quite through the body, ſo that he fell off his horſe ſtark dead; at which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding joyful, commanding them to ſet open the Gates, and that Valentine ſhould be brought up unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lady beheld Valentine well, ſhe came towards him, and ſaid unto him on this manner: Kt. you are moſt welcome, for I never ſaw a more valiant and couragious man all the days of my life: Enter my Caſtle, for it appeareth by your Valour and Chivalry that you are deſcended from the Loyns of ſome Royal Stock. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poor Adventurer, for neither my ſelf, nor this my Companion never knew from what Stock we deſcended. He was nouriſhed by a Beaſt in the Forreſt, and lived there like a Wild-man, till when as I conquered him by my Sword; beſides he never ſpake in his life more than you ſee at this inſtant. Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being ſo fair a Lady.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Valentine* ſhewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he queſtioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was deſcended.

VAlentine having purchaſed free entrance by overcoming the Seneſchal, at laſt he ſhewed the Ring that the Green Knight had

had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the Token, saying, Fair Sir, had you shewed this Ring when you first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot better commend you, than to admire your brave courageous heart. Whilst Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the Tables were spread, the Lady sat down, and Valentine was also plac'd just against her, in whom she took her greatest felicity, as he in her: Dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the Table, and taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my privilest Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein the Brazen-head standeth, the which head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tydings: wherefore both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat Valentine grew exceedingly joyful: first, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber door guarded on this manner: on the one side a grim, fearful, and ugly shaped Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his neck, which offered to make resistance: On the other side of the Chamber door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladys leave, or else fight with the Villain and Lyon: Valentine perceiving these two Watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered, These two you see here are to keep this Door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have perished in their presumption: And again, the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a K. and to such she shews her self very loving.

Lady (quoth Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. Orson likewise assailed the Villain, and e're he could be ready to lift up his Club of Iron, he took him by the middle so strongly, that he threw

him

him againſt the wall; he took away his club, and gave him ſuch a blow that he tumbled on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, he had ſlain him in that place. Being both thus vanquiſhed, the Gate was opened, and they entred the Chamber, wherein they might ſee all the world could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphires, with great multitudes of precious ſtones: but in this Chamber was four Pillars of Jaſper, marvellous rich, of which two of them are yellow as moſt fine Gold, and a third Green, more Green than Graſs, a fourth more red than a flame of fire; between theſe Pillars was a precious Stone, called an Emery, more rich than the heart of man can deviſe, in the midſt of which ſtood a Head a Brass, ſet upon a rich Pillar. Valentine wondring at the Riches of theſe objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publickly open concerning his Birth. At length when every voice was ſilent, the Head began to ſpeak after this manner. Thou Famous Kt. of Royal Parentage, art called *Valentine the Valiant*, of whom it may juſtly be ſaid, there was never the like appeared before me; thou art the Man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of *Greece*, and thy Mothers Name is *Belliſant*, Siſter to K. *Pepin* of *France*, who by wrong Suggeſtions hath been baniſhed her Country, and Husbands Bed; know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal*, in the Caſtle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the keeping of her theſe twenty years: *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the Wild-man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother; you two were delivered by the Empreſs *Belliſant*, in the Forreſt of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy Companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nouriſhed in that Wood, amongſt the reſt of her Whelps, and never ſucked he any other: For thy part *Valentine*, thou waſt found the very ſame day in that Forreſt by K. *Pepin*, who hath nouriſhed thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans eſtate: Further, thus much I ſhall alſo tell thee, that this thy Brother here preſent, ſhall never have the uſe of his Tongue, till a Thread be cut under the ſame, and then thou ſhalt hear him ſpeak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou haſt begun and thou ſhalt proſper, for my time is at a Period ſith thou art come to enter into this Chamber.

Valentine marking well all that the Head had uttered, fell upon the boſom of his Brother Orſon, and Orſon on his, and with kind embraces

they

they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus to break out into speeches: Alas, courteous Kt. I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you I am freed of ten years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again by this Brazen-head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth Valentine) I accept you as my Wife, who was given to me by your Brother the Green Kt. that was vanquished by my Brother Orson before the City of Aquitain: only this I shall request. That as your Brother the Green Kt. hath forsaken Mahomet, so you would do the like. Sir (quoth she) I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you and I shall live. And so great joy betided all the Inhabitants of this Castle, for they were right glad of the tidings that the Brazen-head had declared unto him. After this, the reputation of Valentine encreased more and more: but all his former joy and gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

NOw shall you understand, that within this Castle where Clerimond was, dwelt a Dwarf (named Pacolet) which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a Child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in Schools. This Pacolet being of more Age than stature, grew exceeding witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in Negromancy, that by Enchantment, he had composed a little Horse made of Wood: in the head of which Horse, he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of Wood, that every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he would turn the pin towards the place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run through the air swifter than any Bird. This Pacolet being in the Castle, observed the behaviour of Valentine, and when he had fit time, he addressed himself for Portugal, to bear news to Ferragus, how all matters had passed at the Castle.

So

So he betook himſelf to his wooden Horſe, and in a moment of time (letting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his deſired wiſh, and related the ſtory unto Ferragus. When Ferragus heard this Tale, he grew extreeding angry againſt Valentine, for that he ſhould have his Siſter in Marriage: Alſo, he grew enraged at her, that ſhe ſhould grant her love unto him (being a Chriſtian Knight) ſwearing by his Gods to take revenge upon them both: But all this he diſſembled unto Pacolet, bidding him return and bear this meſſage to Clerimond, that the Knight Valentine, who ſhall have her to Wife, is right welcome, and that e're long I will come in perſon to viſit them, accompanied with a gallant Troop of Nobles, and then ſhall their Nuptials be royally ſolemnized: So Pacolet took leave and got him on his Horſe, and was in an inſtant at home again. Being come, he preſently went into the preſence of the Lady Clerimond, and ſaid unto her: Madam, I have been in Portugal with your Brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiſeth e're long to be here in Perſon, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady ſtood amazed, and at laſt began to anſwer him thus: Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou haſt told? Aye me, the Gods defend my Brother from Plotting any Treaſon againſt me, for I am well aſſured he could never abide a Knight of France, nor any other that is a Chriſtian; I am right angry that thou didſt not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a ſerious buſineſs for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Chriſtian Woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother Ferragus, in the Caſtle that he now holdeth:

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious Journey into *Portugal* to ſee the Lady *Belliſant*, *Valentine's* Mother, his returning back, and the news that he brought.

THE Lady having ended her tale, Pacolet made her this anſwer: Lady, ſeeing you are ſo earneſt, I ſhall for your ſake, make another journey into Portugal, and before to morrow mid-day, I ſhall bring you tidings whether ſhe be there or no. Valentine hearing him ſay ſo, replied: That thou canſt not do, except the Devil be in thee: The Lady Clerimond ſaid unto Valentine: Let him alone,

for by art he hath provided, that he will ride more than a thousand miles a day. Hereat Valentine marvelled much, and calling Orson unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that hindred his speech, which being done, he spake presently, where he related the story of his life led in the Forrest, which held them the

most part of that evening. On the morrow, according as Pacolet had promised, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, saying unto him on this manner: Sir, I am returned from Portugal, and have seen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine) thou art right welcome, for it is the I only desire to hear of. Love (quoth Clerimond) be not too hasty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into Portugal to him, and then we shall have both our hearts desire. Nay surely (quoth Pacolet) your Brother will come hither: I (quoth the Lady) but I stand in fear of him, lest that he work some Treason against us; for this last night I dreamed a fearful dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I

dreamed

dreamed I was in a great water, in the which I ſhould have periſhed, had it not been for a great face that drew me out thereof, being out, methought I ſaw a Griffin iſſue out of a Cloud, who with his tallons took me up, and carried me I know not whither. Love (quoth Valentine) give no reſpect at all to Dreams, for they be but Deluſions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true (quoth ſhe) but they trouble me every night. Having ended this diſcourſe, they entred into a fair Arbor, garniſhed with great varieties of Flowers, repoſing themſelves ſome few hours in long dalliance, where we will leave them, and you ſhall hear that the ſame day arrived Ferragus the Traytor, at the Caſtle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, preſently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and ſaid unto her; Siſter, above all Creatures living, I have moſt deſired to ſee you, tell me, I pray you, which is the Kt. you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother, is the man. Whereupon Valentine ſaluted him with great reverence. Ferragus ſaid unto him: Fair Kt. ye be welcome into theſe Quarters, for the love of my Siſter Clerimond; for ſeing it is ſo fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the Green Kt. and ſent him into France, cauſing him to be Chriſtned even ſo have I a great deſire to be baptized, to become a Chriſtian and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all theſe words which he had ſpoken; but under theſe fair promiſes he ſmothered Treaſon; yet at laſt Valentine began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Caſtle, for the ſpace of theſe twenty years, you have maintained a Chriſtian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly ſee, her name is Belliſant, Siſter to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperor of Greece. By Mahomet, ſaid Ferragus, you ſay truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you ſhall go along with me into Portugal, ſo ſhall you rightly be informed whether ſhe be the Lady you ſeek for, or no; Gramercy (quoth Valentine) and ſo Ferragus left him, and ſaid unto his Siſter Clerimond after this manner: Siſter, my Souls joy, I deſire your advancement more than any thing on earth, and am glad you have found out ſo worthy and valiant a Knight for your Eſpouſal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my deſire is, that you would go with me into Portugal,

and there, with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to solemnize your Nuptial-day.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the Treachery of *Ferragus*; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woful Lamentations.

FErragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his Ships in a readiness, and packing up all their Provision, they put forth for Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of Comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orson. In the dead time of the night, when the two Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their Beds, and committed them to bands, muzling their eyes also, that they could not see: Now when Clerimond saw what was done to her love, she fell into an extream agony, and with watry eyes began thus to vent her lamentations: Alas dear Valentine, our joys are suddenly turned unto sorrow, thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Lord: thou hast robbed me of all joy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further know this, that if you put to death these two Knights, you carry to your Grave the name of a Villain. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them, and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see two such Innocents fally put to death without desert. Yea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow, she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict command that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the Prisoners, thus leaving her to her laments, and the Christians, both Valentine and Orson fast bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himself

himſelf thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have ſpent all my youth in travel and danger, only to find out the Parents that begat me, and ſee now when hope had well nigh ſet an end to all my ſorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine Enemies, that only ſeek my death. Alas Brother Orſon, how ſuddenly are all our joys blaſted, and our mirth turned into mourning? On this wiſe complained Valentine and Orſon, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugal, and ſhortly after arrived at the Caſtle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tidings was brought to the Lady Belliſant, that two Chriſtian Knights were come along with them as Priſoners: at which news ſhe quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a ſight of them: When ſhe was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at laſt ſhe ſaid thus unto them: Children (quoth ſhe) of what Country be you, and where were you born. Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not far from Paris: Ferragus perceiving the Lady to ſpeak unto them, ſharply rebuked her, ſaying, Lady, leave your queſtioning, for except they renounce their Faith, they ſhall miſerably end their days in Priſon: and therewithal called unto him a Jayler, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with Bread and Water. This miſery was not ſufficient, but more than that, certain churliſh Sarazens ſtanding by, ſmote theſe two Children with their fiſts and ſtaves.

After Ferragus had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Siſter Clerimond unto him; when ſhe came before him, ſhe could not forbear tears, which made him thus ſay unto her: Siſter, leave weeping, for I ſwear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen-head, as well appeareth, in that you make your choice with one of the contrary Religion: but change your mind, for it is a ſhame that you ſhould firſt take him to Husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight; next a Chriſtian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I ſay, therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raiſe your Fortunes, by matching you unto that Puiſſant King Trompart. Forget, I ſay, theſe two French-men, for ſhortly thou ſhalt ſee, I will make them ſhorter by the head. Brother, (quoth Clerimond) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly ſee I muſt let go the thing I cannot have, for whereas force conſtraineth, fear hath

little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These discourses finished, Ferragus departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entring the great Hall, with very much honour and reverence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, Welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady, quoth Clerimond, I give you a Million of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither under colour of friendship and love, brought over by my Brother's fair promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas, Sister, pity me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living; he is the comliest, valiantest, and hardest Knight that liveth upon the face of the earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of Arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my love; wherefore, Lady, pity my distressed estate, and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady Bellisant said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me? Speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, I bring you joyful tidings, and yet the end of my tale will be as sorrowful, as the beginning is joyful: Know this, that I am not ignorant of your Estate and Dignity, for you are Sister to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperor of Greece, who wrongfully banished you his Country: Soon after your exile you were in your travel delivered of two fair Sons in a Forrest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true. Nay Lady, your Children are both alive, and I can tell you where to find them. At these words Bellisant fell into a Swound for joy; Clerimond quickly recovered her again, and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damosel, how came all these things to your understanding? Then Clerimond related the whole story; how Ferragus her Brother by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. Bellisant hearing her two Children were imprisoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, insomuch that the noise of Ferragus entred the Hall, to understand the cause of their mournful clamours; Clerimond told the Queen all from point to point.

Well,

well, ſaid the Queen, be appeaſed, and diſſemble the cauſe from the King, for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather ſo much the worſe, than better affected, either to them, or you.

CHAP. XXXIV.

How *Pacolet*, the Dwarf, comforted the two Ladies.

AS theſe three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden houſe. When Clerimond ſaw him, ſhe wept bitterly, and ſaid: Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou ſhouldſt thus rob me of all my joys at once, for I am well aſſured that thou mightſt have given me warning of all theſe miſeries. Lady, quoth Pacolet, be not ſo highly diſpleaſed at me, for I proteſt I am ignorant of all that hath betided you, but ſeeing you have begun theſe bitter bickerings, I ſwear my Art ſhall utterly forſake me, but I will find a remedy for you to avenge your ſelf, and to that purpoſe, I here vow all my ſervice unto you and Valentine, while life doth laſt. Friend (quoth the Lady Belliſant) if thou canſt but free my two Children out of Priſon, I ſhall acknowledge my ſelf highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy labours every way. Lady (quoth Pacolet) no more take you care, but comfort your ſelf, and e're long you ſhall well perceive my crafty work to take ſuch effect by my Art, that you ſhall have cauſe to remember me while you have a day to live.

CHAP. XXXV.

How by Art *Pacolet* ſet free *Valentine* and *Orſon* from the Priſon of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines with their Mother and fair *Clerimond*.

IT chanced that on a day Ferragus made a great Feaſt for all his Nobles, which day they paſſed in ſuch revelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themſelves to reſt. Being all at reſt, Pacolet was ſtill watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whoſe Gates were braſs, and ſurely locked, by his enchantment the Gates flew open, and he entred thereinto. Anon he came unto the door of the Priſon, where the Lady's two

Sons

Sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the door, the Locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the door open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death; and at last Valentine began to weep, but Orson said unto him: Take courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: and sith it is so, he that first entreth here, to lay hand upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar, that lay thereby: But at last Pacolet spake to them, saying, Lords, fear me not, for I am come to set you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no noise, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother: Valentine at this Speech rejoyced greatly, but Orson beholding him with an austere look, would not give any credit to his words. Pacolet at the fierce look of Orson was much astonied, insomuch that he gave back, but by the words of Valentine he was much reconforted, and Orson's fury abated.

After this, Pacolet led them to the Chamber whereas these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful tears. When he came unto the door of the Chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet so wrought with his charms, that all that were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead sleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber, where the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly fell into a swound, speaking unto them never a word: but the Lady Clerimond piteously said thus unto Valentine: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous Extasie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and Orson also clasped her about the middle, saying unto her, Sweet Mother, speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender lips, but all this while she spake never a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the earth in a swound, and there lay panting for breath a long season, while the fair Lady Clerimond stood over them bewailing this strange accident: At last coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them weeping; Alas, my Children, for your sakes have I suffered more pain and anguish than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cause of these my dolorous passions, but sith the Gods have so ordained that I may once see you, and embrace you before my death, all my griefs are banquished,

quiſhed, and become no burden unto me. But tell me, how have you been preſerved ever ſince your birth, and in what Country, and with whom have you remained? for it would glad me to hear the events thereof. At laſt (ſhe having ended her words) Valentine began the piteous ſtory of all their Miſeries, even to that preſent hour. Valentine having finiſhed his ſad Tale, by which the Empreſs Belliſant clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailing with many more tears than before, ſhe would fain again have fallen into a ſwound, but Pacolet, prevented her, who was at that inſtant in the Chamber, ſaying unto her: Lady, leave theſe laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and ſo rid us out of the ſubjection of K. Ferragus. Alas, ſaid Clerimond, my love, remember the oath that you made unto me, to make me your wife. Dear Lady (quoth Valentine) what I have promiſed I will perform, but at this preſent the love I owe unto this my Brother toucheth me near the heart.

Theſe words of Valentine being ended, Orſon ſaid unto Pacolet, Go open me the door of Ferragus, and with theſe hands I ſhall work his final downfal and overthrow. Pacolet anſwered, Come, go along with me, and I ſhall gladly open it, to fulfill this your deſire. But know this, if you Murther him, you ſhall loſe the love of my Brother the Green Knight, who may divers and ſundry ways do us diſpleaſure. Quoth Valentine, you ſay truth, and I agree unto this your wiſe and diſcreet motion; for I would not have you guilty of ſuch a crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gain the whole world.

At this very hour they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea where he had appointed for them a Ship ready Rigged, and having a fair guſt of wind, they ſpeedily arrived at the Caſtle of Clerimond: whither being once come, they refreſhed themſelves with Pleaſures.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* eſcaped the Caſtle of *Ferragus*, and ſailed with the two Ladies into *Acquitain*.

VAlentine being come, and ſafely arrived at the Caſtle of Clerimond, could not ſo content himſelf therewith, but ſtill grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing leaſt he ſhould follow

them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present, to victual their Ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition to be in a readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Bellisant, and the Lady Clerimond, saying; that he would suddenly depart for Greece, towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperor, who without any just cause, had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orson and Pacolet.

The next day they took Shipping and went on their Voyage, and at break of day, the Jaylor (according to his accustomed manner) went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their allowance of bread and water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him; Dread King, mercy, for this Night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to Prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and said: O King, a greater mischief than this is likewise happened this night, for the Christian Woman whom you have kept so many years, is this night escaped away, and hath carried along with her your sister Clerimond. Ferragus understanding these harsh Tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a Mad man among his Barrons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them; so he breaking him to his Club, issued out the foremost.

He was a mighty Man, who was in Stature about thirteen foot in height. Being out of the Town, he calling his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass he met withal, but he demanded Tydings of them, yet he could not hear of them, for Pacolet by his Art was too subtile for Ferragus. At last being tyred with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the Castle of Clerimond, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by Mahomet, that he would either find Clerimond, and all her company, or else he would shake all Christendom, and so departed the Castle.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How King *Ferragus* aſſembled all his Men of War to take Revenge upon *Valentine* and his Siſter *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could hear no Tydings of the Chriſtians, & his Siſter Clerimond, he was grieved, & in his fury ſent for all his Men of War on every ſide, preſently to aſſemble themſelves to take Sea and follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had ſpent many days, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and reſted from their fruitleſs Toyl. Whilſt Ferragus, and his Forces were thus ſcowring the flowing Seas, Valentine and Orſon were entred the City of Aquitain: being there, they diſſembled their Eſtate, and as Private Perſons, Lodged in a Houſe of a Burgeſs of the Town. Valentine would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orſon, thereunto would not agree; for he having a further reach of policy ſaid thus unto him: Brother, I find by ſmall experience, that Women are unconſtant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us only ſee and try how the Lady Fezon ſtandeth affected towards me, and herein we ſhall try her conſtancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I ſhall right willingly agree hereto. Then Orſon took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entred the great Hall, taking Pacolet the dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke he ſaluted him with all reverence. The Duke obſerving well his behaviour, took it to be Orſon that thus demeaned himſelf, but after finding by his ſpeech he was like to be deceived, he ſaid: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you ſervice, in any manner you will imploy me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered ſervice, and will give you Sallary enough to content you, inſomuch that if you will not depart my ſervice before I give leave, I ſhall give you ſuch riches, as all the ſtock you came from could never raiſe. Thanks great Duke (qd. Orſon) for your liberal heart, and I here vow e're I depart, to deſerve your love and liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requeſted him to bide his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in preſent pay one Hundred and Fifty

Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of his preferment, and ever so carried him at Meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongst the rest, the fair Lady Fezon, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave for that time, and returned to his Lodging: where his Mother and the Lady Clerimond had taken up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much rejoyced thereat: but this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an Enemy. Ferragus according to his purpose, suddenly arrived before Aquitain, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the Giant Knight had pitched Pavillions, when that Orson became his banquisher; by this means much hurt redounded unto the Country and Provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and overturn the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his Men of War, and being thus put in a readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Paccolet, but these three were not known unto any at that time: where we will now leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken Prisoner in the battle by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*.

The Duke of Aquitain calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens, that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battle the next morrow, so calling up all his Forces, and placing them in readiness, there hapned a bloody battle before the City

City of Aquitain, and many a brave Leader on both parts, there loſt their lives. The Grant Ferragus himſelf was amongſt the thickeſt, gathering himſelf as near as he could unto his Standard bearer. The chief men ſlain in this battle, were ſix valiant Knights, that is to ſay, Baudumain, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony, the good Marſhal, and Gloriam the hardy: all near about the Duke of Aquitain, and they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. This happening the Chriſtians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himſelf was begirt with Enemies, ſo that none might come to ſuccour him, yet in the midſt of theſe dangers, he bare himſelf moſt valient, and ſtill cryed, Aquitain, Aquitain, my Noble hearts fight on for Aquitain: but in the end, all little availed, Ferragus having once gotten a ſight of him, came near, and at laſt took him Priſoner, and led him to his Pavillion. Ferragus having thus beſtowed the Duke, came up again to the Battle, which ſtruck ſuch an amazement into the hearts of the Chriſtians, that they would have forſaken the field, eſpecially, becauſe they had loſt the Duke their Lord and Maſter. Valentine and Orſon ſeeing them thus to waver, came to us with all the ſpeed they could, & cryed out to them with a loud voice: Valiant Knights, and Men of Aquitain, ſhew your ſelves Men, run not away in time of extremity, for if you do lamentable will be your reproach: Be hardy and couragious once again, let us try the fortune of the day.

Theſe two Knights having thus done ſpeaking, the people began afreſh to gather up their ſcattered Forces, & turned their forces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tydings was brought into the City that the Duke was taken Priſoner, at which ill News the Lady Fezon lamented more than all the reſt; ſaying with a heavy heart, ſhedding tears: Alas my Father! now is your life in hazard, for from theſe Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel ſweet Father (quoth ſhe) I ſhall never hereafter ſee you again, but ſhall be here left as a dejected Orphan. Alas Orſon my love, thy long and tedious ſtaying abroad doth much diſtemper me, for if you were here preſent, there would be ſome hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongſt the thickeſt, hewing forth his way with his ſword. Orſon on the other ſide was not idle, for he had taken an Oath, that either he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his body amongſt the reſt. Pacolet the Magician and

Dwarf

Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all hushed, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put spurs to his Horse, and ran violently thorow the Battle, and escaped: Orson and Pacolet being past danger, hurled away their own Shields, and hanging about their necks the shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the Image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite thorow the Camp of the Pagans, (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pavillion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him: But Pacolet perceiving the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms, into a deadly sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke, & said unto him: Come with us presently, mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of Ferragus; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight, which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your guide thorough the Wicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed hands, and therefore for your dangerous Enterprize, in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter Fezon in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I have given her not long since, to a Knight, but he was Wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his tongue, but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy Noble act, and with her I freely give thee half of my Dukedom. Thanks, quoth the Knight, such a gift is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto our discomfitted Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again thorow the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tydings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the conflict of the Battle.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place to find out his Brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the Battle, and as a man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him: Ferragus espying him so Valiant,

come

come up to cloſe him, and having gotten him once in Chaſe, never left him, until he had ſlain his horſe under him.

Valentine having thus loſt his Horſe, Ferragus ſeized on him as his Priſoner, cauſing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he ſhould not eſcape from Death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole Land, but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Priſoner Valentine faſt bound along the field, Orſon, Pacolet, & the Duke of Aquitain, ſet upon him. Orſon crying out, Let him not eſcape us; and therewithal put ſpurs to his Horſe, and ran ſo fiercely againſt the Pagan Ferragus, that both he and Valentine, his Priſoner, fell to the earth. the Gyant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orſon eſpying him, cryed out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing: hereupon Valentine was new mounted: when the Chriſtians ſaw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increaſed, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud; Long live the Duke of Aquitain. This ſudden noiſe much amazed the Sarazens, inſomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee, and raiſe his ſiege: When the men of Aquitain heard the retreat, they recovered themſelves again into the City. The Battel being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orſon went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his daughter Fezon; being all aſſembled, he called Orſon unto him, demanding of him his Name? Sir, quoth he, I am called Gregory: Then ſaid the Duke thus before them all, Lords, I give you to underſtand, that above all men living, I am moſt beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter Fezon, it is my pleaſure, that above all men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cauſe to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there aſſembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that ſhe ſhould do no leſs than to ſubmit to her fathers Will, and the rather, conſidering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: Orſon hearing all this, ſtill concealed himſelf till he had further allayed the Conſtancy of the Lady Fezon, acquainting his Brother Valentine what he purpoſed to do, as enſueth in this next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Orson* tryed the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Married her.

ORson having a desire to try the Constancy of Fezon, at last replyed thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards me, and likewise fit for her to make choice of such a man as is of equal birth with hers, & therefore if it please you, let her answer for her self. With these words he entred into the Chamber of fair Fezon, and sitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and said unto her: Lady, your beauty hath so enlarged my heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate man: your Father is willing that I shall enjoy you, if you please so also, then may I justly vaunt, that I have won the faicest Lady living, and will prove a constant Knight whilst I have breath; if you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost: it is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good men too, in the rule of Honour, but as for him whom I mean to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth Orson) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you: Sir (said she) it is reason that I obey my Father, but if so be that my Father will constrain me to break my faith, and forsake him that banquished the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my faith. Lady (quoth Orson) I wonder how you can set your affections on such a man, for he his of a wild nature and disposition; besides, as your Father reporteth, is dumb and cannot speak a word: True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom faith is already fixed; and therefore stay your suit, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyal, to hear the wise Answer of Fezon, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, saying; Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying; that she will never have other Husband

hand than he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for ſhe ſhall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, & I will talk with her my ſelf. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding unto you, and ſo left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon. Brother (ſaid Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Palace, for I am aſſured the Duke will give me good Entertainment. Sir (ſaid Orſon) do as you pleaſe: Valentine clad himſelf in rich apparel, & Orſon put on nothing but the Jacket in which he firſt entred into Aquitain, and thus, accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his daughter, in the preſence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in refuſing the Knight, of whoſe love I have made ſufficient tryal, for he hath ſaved my life? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to ſolicite me no further in this matter, ſeeing you know aſſuredly that I have given my promiſe to him that vanquiſhed the Green Knight: what greater ſhame can there be, than to break my promiſe which I have made already? If by you I am conſtrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus diſcourſing, the Duke eſpyed Valentine and Orſon coming towards him, whom he embraced & honourably entreated. Orſon having ſaluted the Duke, paſſed towards the Lady Fezon, who received him with a ſmiling countenance, and ſaid thus unto him: you are welcome above all others, your long abſence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did my Father had beſtowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orſon) I have learned to ſpeak ſince I was with you laſt, and am the very ſame Man that yeſterday Courted you in your Chamber: all which pleaſed the Lady exceedingly. So Orſon went into a Chamber, and put on rich apparel: being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and ſaid: Son, pardon my raſhneſs, in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully perſwaded that thou wouldeſt never have returned. Sir (quoth Orſon) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had ſpent their time, ſince their departure? Orſon told him their whole Progreſs, and what

dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of Constantinople, and Bellisant, Sister to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their descent was of Royal Blood, was right glad thereat, & said: Knights you are worthy all honour by reason of your Birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King Pepin are so hardly besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedy aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield themselves. Valentine giving good ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding sad, but Pacolet at last put him somewhat out of his dumps, and said: Leave off your sorrowing, for e're to morrow night I shall send you to Constantinople; but, quoth Valentine, it must be then by the Devils means. Sir, said Pacolet, mount you upon my Wooden-Horse, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine answered, that will I do, for I desire nothing so much as the sight of my Father, whom I never saw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: but before his departure the Duke married his Daughter unto Orson, in the presence of the Lady Bellisant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the consent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: and in this assembly there was a Spy, who observed all the Proceedings, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received these tydings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but especially on Pacolet, for stealing away his Sister Clerimond, whom he so much loved, and had ranked her among the Christians.

CHAP. XL.

How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthened his forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*.

FErragus being out of hope to get revenge on the two Knights, and his Sister Clerimond, called unto him a Messenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, especially one of them was to King Trompart, of whom he desired aid against his Enemies, all which, if he could speedily accomplish, he would give unto him for his Wife, his Sister Clerimond. At the farewel of his Letter, he desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimain. Here leave we the Gyant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leave for Constantinople. But in the end, he said thus unto the

Duke

Duke, and Orſon his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely Clerimond. Valentine, quoth the Duke, take you no thought for her, for I ſhall have a Fatherly eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leave, at laſt came to Clerimond, who loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his Brother Orſon, ſaid thus, Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King Pepin, and tell them e're long I will viſit them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I ſhall remember you, and ſo departed. Orſon ſtill remained in the Palace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to do; namely, to take his leave of his Mother; but when ſhe ſaw him, ſhe claſped him round with her Arms, but was not able to ſpeak: Valentine perceiving her natural affection, recomforted her in the beſt manner he could, but all was in vain.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the pittiful Tale the Empreſs made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel into *Conſtantinople*, and what ſpeeches paſſed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

VAlentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at laſt ſaid thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not ſo careful for me, for if I eſcape danger, I ſhall gladly ſee you here again, in the mean ſpace take care of my fair Clerimond, and let her be aſſured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been baſely abuſed, and falſly baniſhed my husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and alſo to my Brother King Pepin, and ſay unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be ſuch a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and juſtly maintain my unſpotted Chaſtity, Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I ſhall perform, and, e're many months have run their courſe, I ſhall cauſe my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his raſh proceedings. So now he takes his laſt farewel of his dear Mother, with this charge, that ſo ſoon as they were arrived, he ſhould ſend Pacolet to bring tydings of all that had happened.

Now taketh he his way to the Lodging of Pacolet, whither be-

ing come, Pacolet made ready his Wooden Horse, and mounting Valentine behind him, turned the Pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that e're the morrow at noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night to the great Hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King Pepin, sat both at Supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperor and King Pepin, espyed Valentine, and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperor; Great Emperor, behold here one of our own blood, a valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him and kissed him: The Green Knight was the first that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperor his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his foul Fact, in banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blandiman, who well observed Pacolet, ever since he saw him in Portugal, and at last went he unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistris, the Lady Bellisant: Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy and gladness was heard about the City for the life of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperor's son, the valiant Knight. Valentine seeing such continual recourse of all estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yield unto you any other recompence but thanks, and especially unto my Uncle King Pepin, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished by reason of a sharp edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a dead Traytor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country: Wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her natural Son) offer my body in Combat against any false Traytor whatsoever.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken Priſoners in the Battle of *Conſtantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* and his Men.

WHen the Emperor perceived his Son to be ſo much moved for the diſhonour which was done unto his Mother the Empreſs, he wept for very grief of heart, and ſaid thus unto his ſon: Alas my ſon, I have no doubt of thee to be my ſon, neither of thy manhood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that accuſed her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant in the preſence of thy Uncle Pepin, my ſelf, and divers others of high eſtate. At his death he confeſſed the whole Treaſon wrought againſt her, and ſince that time I have ſent divers & ſundry meſſengers into all Nations, to hear tydings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my deſired wiſh: therefore I pray thee, if thou canſt, tell me ſome glad tydings of her. Father, quoth Valentine) I know ſomewhat, for yeſter-night I both ſaw her, & ſpeak with her in Aquitain; telling him beſides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had ſuddenly brought him thither by Art, rather than good ſpeed. The Emperor hearing ſuch gladſome news from his ſon, cauſed great Triumphs throughout the City of Conſtantinople. When the Sarazens heard ſuch ſhouts and revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himſelf in a readineſs. The Souldan round begirt Conſtantinople, famiſhing up all the Inhabitants moſt lamentable to behold. At laſt theſe tydings came to the Ears of Valentine, and the Green Knight, who arming themſelves, came into the City, & ſaid, Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet couragious and ſtand to it, and there is hopes of recovery, wherefore follow my counſel, iſſue forth ſome number of you to forrage for ſome victuals, whilſt I, accompanied with 2000 men, ſet upon the Sarazens. They did as he adviſed them, & within ſhort time they behaved themſelves ſo valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all ſorts of victuals. Having thus ſeized the victuals, they were conducting the ſame into the City, but the Souldan ſore vexed at his loſſes, got between the City & them, thinking to have deſeared them from

from entrance, but King Pepin espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passage, presently couched his Spear, and ran upon the Souldan so violently, that he bare the proud Pagan to the earth, then pulling out his Sword at one Archillon, a very valiant Commander, with such fury, that he struck him out of his Saddle. Valentine and the Green Knight perceiving the great courage of King Pepin, & what fortune he had in the field, at that present entred freshly into the Battel, and with a resolute courage, even in the presence of the Souldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrown, Valentine addressed him against the Souldan himself, and with his Spear he so encountred him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his horse. Moraldas, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken prisoner by the Green Knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But mark what follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their

uncertain

uncertain Victory, that they purſued the enemy ſo far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and ſo conſequently were taken Priſoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, inſulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomet, that they ſhould never eſcape with life, but gave preſent commandment to raiſe up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and preſently in the ſight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green Knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to thoſe Chriſtians that had gotten great Booty of Victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reaſon that they were encountred by the Sarazens Army: In which encounter the Chriſtians were ſo hard beſet, that they were doubtful what ſhould be the end of that days bickering. And at laſt, they eſpying what deſperate caſe they ſtood in, with one conſent iſſued forth, Men, Women, Prieſts, Clarks, and all degrees. When the Pagans ſaw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themſelves into their Tents, and by that means the Chriſtians obtained all their Prey of victuals, and ſafely conveyed it into the City, although with loſs of many a like. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loſs of his Warlike men, eſpecially for his Son Valentine and the Green Knight; moſt heavy and ſad alſo was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet ſeeing theſe two Peers take the matter ſo heavily, recomforted them again, ſaying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it ſhall fare better with Valentine and the Green Knight, than you can imagin. Friend (ſaid the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Eſtate: Sir, ſaid he, thereby you ſhall make tryal of my love and reſpect towards you: ſo he betook him to his Wooden Horſe, and departed towards the Souldans Hoſt, and came thither juſt at the inſtant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Green Knight to death: and how it was prevented, you ſhall hear in the Chapter following.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight, out the of bondage of the *Souldan*, and how *Pacolet* cozened the *Souldan* when he had him upon his horse, and instead of carrying him to *Portugal*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged.

ALl being assembled as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak: Lords, here I present before you these that most incumber the mighty Gyant Ferragus, and that which most you ought to respect, is that one of them hath forsaken his Religion, and for that cause my judgment is, that he be sent to Ferragus, and from him receive punishment fitting his offence: Nay, said the other Sarazens, let us never do so, but let them both here suffer Death to morrow morn. Lords (quoth the Souldan) let it be so. These resolutions thus agreed upon, the Souldan entred his Pavillion to Supper, where being set, Pacolet came and saluted him in the name of Mahomet: Pacolet (quoth the Souldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my dear Friend? Sir (said Pacolet) right well, and by me sends gladsome tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly, said the Souldan, I pray thee begin; then Pacolet drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said: Sir, know this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and sent by the fair wife of Ferragus, whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed these her Affections, but having power no longer to keep close the closet of her Breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, so that no opportunity would be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladys sight; Pacolet, thou hast more gladded my heart, than all the worldly Treasure can afford; true it is, she is the only Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wishes: The Souldan caused Pacolet to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went on towards their Journey, but mark what followed; Valentine and the Green Knight you must conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of Pacolet, but durst not make any shew thereof; and Pacolet on the other side shewed himself a flatterer to the Souldan, in eating, drinking, and revelling at the Souldan's Table,

ble, and in beholding the Priſoners, ſaid thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all; Sir, how dare you venture your Noble Perſon ſo near to this Green Knight, and not rather give him his deſert, for of all men living he is moſt dangerous: firſt, for the wrongs that he hath committed againſt his Brother Ferragus, bereaving him of Clerimond, & giving her in Marriage to a Chriſtian Knight; next he hath renounced his Mahomet: theſe things conſidered, it is fit that he ſhould dye, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they ſhall both be hanged. Then the Soldan commanded the Priſoners to be ſtrongly guarded upon pain of death, and ſo withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green Knight under the conduct of thoſe that moſt deſired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine, and the Green Knight, and firſt freed them of their bands, and by Art ſo Charmed all their Warders (who ſlept ſecurely) that he brought them paſt all danger. Having thus ſet them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Soldan's Tent, crying out ſo loud to him, that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to ſay unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the wife of Ferragus, ſeeing for her ſake you are loath to break one hours ſleep: Whereunto the Soldan replyed, thou haſt done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a moſt fearful dream, and thus it was: Methought a Crow did bear me ſwiftly through the Air, and as ſhe was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and ſtruck at me with his Bill ſo hard, that the blood forthwith iſſued out in abundance; now this dream maketh me much to fear that Ferragus hath ſome intelligence of my deſires, and means to revenge himſelf upon me. Away Sir (quoth Pacolet) with this childiſh fear, will you therefore neglect the love of ſuch a Beautious Lady? By Mahomet (quoth the Soldan) thou ſayeſt truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this Charge: Sirrah be ſecret, if my Uncle Bryan ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to diſport with Pacolet. Then Pacolet took the Soldan behind him upon his Wooden Horſe, and turning the Pin, the Horſe roſe up into the Air ſo ſwiftly, that in a little time they were come to Conſtantinople, even in the Emperors Palace: The Soldan perceiving Pacolet's horſe to make a ſtay, ſaid thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in Portugal, in the Palace of King Ferragus. By Mahomet (ſaid the

Soldan) the Devil hath born us here very quickly. Well (said Pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the Chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her Bed. So (quoth the Soldan, for I am even well near ravished with Joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of Pacolet, while in the mean space, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great blow against it, insomuch that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperor's rest? Friend, quoth Pacolet, fear not, for I am Pacolet, newly come from the Soldans Host, where I have set at Liberty, both Valentine and the Green Kt. who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himself to be in Portugal: Wherefore he may now be Revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Chamberlain told the Emperor all these Tydings, and King Pepin also; so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the Soldan sat: The Soldan perceiving himself betrayed, cryed out with a loud voice: Thou false Pacolet, Traytor to my Person, I vow to be revenged upon thee for thy disloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a Madman ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to flie from those senceless Walls: As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The Soldan espying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon King Pepin: this Act of his fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Soldan there in bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing Valentine, were joyful for his Deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over his Son, and withal said, Pacolet, one strain more of thy Horse must I demand; you shall Sir (quoth Pacolet) and if you will get behind me, I shall instantly transport you into Hell. But Lords let that pass, and return unto the death of the Soldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of miseries will follow: So that very hour

hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very sight of all his Pagan Host.

This done, the Pagans stood as men confounded and amazed, to see him there hanging, and wondred how he came within the City, but at last Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the Death of the Soldan, they gathered themselves to counsel, and in his stead chose his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all these things done, Pacolet took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into Aquitain, to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promis'd: But before his Departure, Valentine came unto him, and said: Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitain, salute from me my Mother Bellisant, and my loving Lady Clerimond, my brother Orson, and the good Duke of Aquitain, with the rest of his Nobles, and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole procedings here. Sir, said Pacolet, all this shall I willingly performe: so taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the Air as swift as smoak.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his Journeys end, and finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Empress Bellisant, Orson, and Clerimond, all in safety, he saluted them all, and delivered them Letters, who said; Lady, your Son Valentine greeteth you well, shewing you, that the Emperor would gladly see you, confessing his rash credit given to a Traytor, about your banishment, who hath requited it with the loss of his life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the Incursions of the Sarazens, to come himself in person, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom Orson vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful Tydings suddenly fell in a swound, but Orson perceiving it, suddenly snatched her up in his Arms, and being somewhat come to her self, she said: My child, I am fully overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved innocent of such abominable crimes, as I was falsly accused of: but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not desire longer to live, for I am well enough revenged, and my Accuser hath fully satisfied mou shameful death for his Treachery.

CHAP. XLIV.

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to ſuccour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Idie* cauſed King *Trompart*'s head to be ſtruck off: and how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain* in the ſhape of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was ſlain, and how *Orſon* and the *Duke* went with their Army to *Conſtantinople*, to ſuccour the Emperor: and how *Orſon* led along with him his Mother: and how all the *Pagans* were ſlain before *Conſtant*. and how the Emperor received his Son *Orſon* and his Wife *Beliſent* with joy.

PAcolet being arrived in Aquitain, at the ſame time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus againſt the Chriſtians, at whoſe coming, Ferragus began thus to ſalute him; Famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your aſſiſtance to get back my ſiſter Clerimond, and to be reveged on all thoſe that have detained her. Ferragus (ſaid K. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimain the Enchanter, whoſe skill ſhall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get Pacolet into my hands, I ſhall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth Adrimain) put your truſt in me, and ſo taking his leave, betook him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongſt the reſt, he laded himſelf with Victuals, and took his way towards Aquitain; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to ſell his victuals, which was eaſily granted. After he had ſold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. Adrimain, quoth Pacolet, you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your Errand? Then ſaid Adrimain, you know that long I ſerved King Trompart, yet by fate I am fallen into a great Miſchance, for one in his Court having ſmitten me, becauſe I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: Now fearing death I am expelled the Court, and for this cauſe I fled towards you for ſuccour, and will prove unto you a faithful Servant, ſo be pleaſed to accept of me. Adrimain, ſaid Pacolet, I am content, let it be ſo, make thee good Cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, Adrimain

ſaw

ſaw the fair Clerimond paſs through the hall, who preſently demanded what Lady it was: Then, ſaid Pacolet, it is the ſiſter of Ferragus, who muſt be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilſt they were thus in conference, came Orſon unto them, and ſaid: Gentlemen, I could gladly wiſh that one of your Art would ſhew ſomewhat to delight the Aſſembly.

At whoſe words, Adrimain drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in ſuch wiſe, that thro' the Palace (ſeemingly to all the Company) ran a River furniſhed with all ſorts of Fiſh, little and great: when the Beholders ſaw the water to come up ſo ſtrongly againſt them, they were afraid of drowning. Pacolet beholding this feat, amongſt the reſt, began a ſong, and in that ſong a Charm, that it ſeemed to all the Beholders, that a Hart ran thorow that River, overturning all things that ſtood in his way. After this hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the Beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the hart: but Pacolet by his Art, made the hart ſuddenly to vaniſh. This ſport, quoth Orſon, was very well performed; and ſo the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal; for towards midnight, Adrimain ſo enchanted all within the Court, & with them Pacolet, that he had time to work all that he deſired. Afterwards he went towards the horſe of Pacolet, and getting him, came into the chamber of Clerimond, and by Art cauſed her to riſe and make her ready, & ſetting her on the horſe behind him, came unto a window, turned a pin, and ſuddenly he arrived in the Tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, ſaying: Great King Harp not, but haſten you hither, and you ſhall ſee the pleaſant Lady Clerimond, whom I have ſtolen from Aquitain, and with her Pacolets horſe. Now ſaid the King, I well perceive thy love: is this the ſiſter of Ferragus? Yea, ſaid Adrimain, and I have ſtolen her away, and alſo betrayed Pacolet my fellow magician, for he ſhall never be Maſter of his horſe again: Ay, but, ſaid the King, art thou acquainted with the manner of his horſe? O long ſince worthy King, and by vertue of the pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horſe himſelf, and taking Clerimond behind him, would tranſport her into his own country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms,

(for

(for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted Sleep) & set her on the horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witness of, and said thus unto him: My Lord, if you fail one jot of the true use of the horse, both your self and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that, quoth Trompart, and so turning the pin, he mounted swiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way, but not at his Journeys end: for now awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her enchanted sleep, who seeing her self so deluded, fell suddenly into a swound: this chance struck to the heart of K. Trompart, for he was afraid lest she had been dead, & so turning the pin, he stoped the horse in a fair green Field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the horse, he laid her on the grass and took a little water and cast it on her face, and the Lady recovering, made such grievous lamentations, that K. Trompart was well nigh out of his wits; within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King Trompart required something to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come again unto her speech, she weeping uttered these words: Unhappy I above all Creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed Treason. Alas Valentine my Love, cursed be he that hath seperated us. Trompart hearing her so clamorous, reproved her roundly, saying: Lady leave off these foolish words of the christian Boy, or else I shall seperate thy head from thy body; is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am sole Lord of all this jurisdiction, than to have a beggerly Start-up, that hath neither Land nor Living, and with these words he would have killed her, but the Lady disdaining him, hit him with her Fist upon the mouth.

This strange and unlookt for disdainfulness, put King Trompart in such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and set her upon the horse again: and turning the pin the contrary way, presently, instead of carrying her into her own Country, he lighted in Indie, in the midst of a Market-place, kept there that day: the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady Clerimond, by this time, knew the horse to be Pacolet's, and said: Now am I falsly betrayed and Pacolet robbed of his horse; but my dear Valentine, be it is most sticketh at my heart, for now shall I never see thee more. Trompart (thought for all this, that he had been in his own country) still beating down her piteous laments with bitter words.

But

But mark what followed: Tydings was brought to the King of Indie, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for King Trompart, for the King of Indie knew him well. King Trompart being come before the King of Indie, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my Brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee, and so caused his head to be smitten off. After, the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he sat in his own person, and he thus said: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your face, it hath enthrawled my heart; wherefore if so you please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious Continent. Sir (quoth she) you speak graciously, but to take any man to Husband, I have made a solemn vow to refrain during the space of one whole year, wherefore pleaseth it you to let my vow be accomplished, and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said, perform thy vow, and remain within my Palace; and he commanded that her Attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of State, into which Chamber she caused to be brought the wooden horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest place she could devise, and still desired she might be freed out of that danger. Now leave we her a while, and return to Pacolet, and look back also to Aquitain, and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The night after Adrimain had betrayed Pacolet, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the City of Aquitain. Moreover, when Pacolet found Adrimain absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it: all this so falling out, Pacolet fell into a most grievous passion, insomuch, as had not Orson at that instant come in, he would have destroyed himself.

Pacolet being thus relieved by Orson, and beholding the general sorrow for the beautious Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traytor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant Maid, and took his way to the Host of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed for her love; but evermore Pacolet excused himself, and said:

Pardon

pardon me, I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter Adrimain, and so they let her pass on. At last Pacolet came to the Tent where Adrimain was; at which Adrimain stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him into his Chamber; but Pacolet no whit to seek of his shifts, made somewhat squeamish, and said: My Lord, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think fit the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth Adrimain) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good stomach to thee, and will use thee well: Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the Tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the Servant of Adrimain, what was become of King Trompart, the servant said, I think he is returned again into his own country, and carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a horse of wood that my Master had given him. Pacolet hearing of this, was ver'd at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come unto his Tent, saying to Pacolet: Daughter, is it time to go to rest? see here is the bed we mean to sport in: Your will be done, said Pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: Pacolet so enchanted him in so strong a sleep, that awake he could not till the morning. As he dealt with Adrimain, so he did with all round about him; and putting off his womans attire, he clad himself in all the richest Cloaths that Adrimain had; and after, with his own Sword cut off his Head, and bare it away with him. Having thus done he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy sleep. This done, he entred the Tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leap out of his bed and cloath him: and tying him in his Girdle, made him run by his side like a Spannel, till he came even to the very entrance of the Gates of Aquitain.

When Pacolet was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons, and espying Pacolet, they said unto him, Where is Clerimond, that thou bringest not her again? he answered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on Adrimain, for here I have brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by

my

my Art I have alſo ſurpriſed, as you may ſee. Then ſaid Orſon, you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet I have to ſay, which is, I have enchanted aſleep the whole Hoſt of Ferragus, therefore if ever you mean to have a reſtleſs Victory, go now. What ſay you? my Lords, quoth Orſon, methinks Pacolet hath well adviſed us, therefore let us go on: So they ſlaughtered all that lay before them, and put Ferragus into a moſt filthy, dark, and loathſome Priſon, until their return.

After this great Slaughter was ended, the Duke return'd again into Aquitain, & there commanded to have the Gyant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted ſleep, unto whom the Duke thus ſaid: Ferragus if thou wilt here forſake thy Mahomet, and receive Baptiſm, then thou ſhalt live, which if thou refuſe to do, thou ſhalt ſurely dye. Know ſaid Ferragus, I had rather ſuffer a thouſand deaths: ſo he was ſuddenly beheaded. After his death, Orſon took leave of the Duke, and went towards Conſtantinople to aid his Father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, againſt the unbelieving Sarazens, that had ſtrongly beſieged the City; but a little before his departing, the Duke ſaid thus unto him: Worthy Knight, ſith you are reſolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; Orſon was very joyful to hear him ſay ſo, and gave him thanks, ſo taking ſome ſmall time to ſet things in a readineſs, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way the Empreſs Beliſant much lamented the hard uſage of her Lord: But Orſon pitying her, ſaid: Mother leave off your Tears, and only joy in that you have been falſly accuſed, which now will much encreaſe your Honour: But I fear moſt our entrance into the City, which as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay, ſaid Pacolet, fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and my ſelf will go before and tell them ſo; Do ſo, ſaid Orſon, and tell Valentine the hard Fortunes of Clerimond. Nay, quoth Pacolet, not I, I will be no bearer of ſuch ſad tydings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperor being ſtrongly beſieged, were in great diſtreſs for Victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the Sword. Then Valentine knowing their great neceſſity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy Band of Souldiers iſſued out of Conſtantinople, and charged upon

200 Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same, with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were beset round about: On the one side with the Soldan, and the other side with the King of Arabia, and thirdly with a King called Affricon. Amongst these companions fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Dramagen, and the King Clarion. The Green Knight also behaved himself gallantly, for at one blow he struck off the Shield Arm of the King of Morien, and before that slew his brother. But all this valour little availed, for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan: who having them in his possession, assembled 15 Pagan Knights to adjudge them to Death. Valentine being thus in bands, greatly lamented the state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate, said, Let us dye in a good cause, and welcome Death.

Now was the Soldan set in his Chair of State, to proceed to Judgment: in the mean space in comes Pacolet, in the midst of the Throng, not known of any, and came and stood before the Judgment Seat, and kneeling down, said: Right dear Sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother Godart, the great King of Argier, who to your succour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, & by me requireth on which side of your Army they shall be ranked. Again, he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them him, & he will send them into his own Country, to draw the Plow, and here stands a couple of fit Instruments for that purpose. The Soldan rejoyced at these tydings, & commanded he should be highly feasted for that night: mean time Valentine and the Green Knight were glad of Pacolet's company. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went unto them, and giving to each of them a Horse, unbound them, and bad them follow him. Being out of the Enemies reach, Pacolet said thus unto them: Lords, be comforted, for in this land is assembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the Knight Orion, the noble Empress, and the Lady Fezon: Ay, but said Valentine, why cometh not the fair Clerimond? Then answered Pacolet, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, she was forced to return again to Aquitain:

So

So Valentine for that time queſtioned no farther with him.

Then Pacolet adviſed them all to go into the City of Conſtantinople, and on the morrow iſſue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean ſpace I will on the other ſide ſo beſtir my ſelf, that the Hoſt of the warlike Duke ſhall come up, and give a freſh aſſault. Now the Soldan ſeeing this, ſhall imagine it to be his Brother the King of Argier.

Pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt well adviſed, and ſo it ſhall be effected. Thus they departed; Pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-ſhore, telling him that he had been with the Hoſt of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orſon anſwered Pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we aſſail the Hoſt of the Sarazens on the one ſide, & they of Conſtantinople on the other, and ſo by that means we ſhall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, ſhall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and ſo kept themſelves that night.

The next morning the Emperor & K. Pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their Hoſt into five Battles. The firſt was delivered to Valentine, the ſecond to the Green Knight, the third to King Pepin, the fourth to Myllan Daugler, and the fifth to Sampſon of Orleance, one that bear in his Banner a Bair of Silver. At break of day, theſe powers iſſued out of the City, to give an aſſault upon the Enemy: being come into the field, they ſounded their inſtruments, the noiſe whereof ſo affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying an Allarum, an Allarum. This Battel was extream hot for the Chriſtians that day, yet the Enemy had no cauſe to boaſt. King Pepin behaved himſelf ſo valiantly, and cryed out to his Souldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Soldan to retire, for the ſafe-guard of their lives, for this night have we loſt our two Priſoners, & alſo there is coming againſt us a new ſupply of a great Army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, and rouzed up their courage doubly, inſomuch that they enforced the Chriſtians to fall back, but little availed their pride; for there came upon them the Duke of Aquitain, with his Forces, and aſſaulted them ſo fiercely, that they put to the Sword all that did come before them, and thus the Chriſtians conquered.

When the battel was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered forces, Valentine and Orson came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful reverence. Father (qd. Valentine) here you may behold my brother Orson, whom as yet you never knew, then the Emperor embraced him with Tears, and so did the worthy King Pepin also. Fair Son (said the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperor, King Pepin, Valentine, Orson, the Green Knight, Blandimand, and Guidard the Merchant, he that vanquished the False Arch-Priest. All these with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the noble Empress Bellissant, and the Lady Fezon.

By this time they are come: When the Emperor saw his Wife Bellissant, he leapt off his Horse & in tears and sighs not being able to speak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to see the man that proved my innocency with his Sword. Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your honour was preserved. Sir, quoth the Lady, you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during life. Then said Valentine, Mother, I pray tell me some Tydings of Clerimond. Fair Son, Clerimond hath been stollen from Aquitain, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, look strangely upon Pacolet, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but Pacolet entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stollen my horse away, but I am revenged on him by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, grew into bitter Passions for his loss.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orſon* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and Accuſed *Orſon* falſly of Treaſon, and how the Knife was found in the King's Bed. And how *Orſon* claimed Combat againſt his Accuſers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in ſeeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end ſlew the *Dragon*, & how *Valentine* after the conqueſt of the *Dragon*, cauſed the K. of *Antioch*, and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawleſs love of the Queen *Roſamond*: And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by King *Brandiffer* his Wifes Father; and how the Emperor of *Greece*, and the Green Knight were taken Priſoners by *Brandiffer*.

THeſe Wars thus ended, King Pepin took his leave of the Emperor and returned into France. Orſon would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and ſpend the remainder of his days in his ſervice. The King was content, and ſaid unto him, I will make you high Conſtable of France; moreover, if it ſo chance that my young Son Charles ſhould decreaſe before me, I will make you K. of France. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you ſhall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady Fezon: The day of taking leave came, and each embraced other with kiſſes and tears: But Valentine could not reſt, for he had loſt his love, wherefore I am reſolved to ſeek my love, for whom I endangered my life, and by my Sword I won her: her I bewail, & her will I recover again if ſhe be alive, but if I find her not, ſhort and woful will be my days; and ſo he called Pacolet to him, & ſaid; Wilt thou ſerve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Taſk? Sir, quoth he, willingly, and am ready whenſoever you ſhall ſet forward. Then Valentine made all things in a readineſs for his departure; and now hath taken Sea and left his Crown and Country, only accompanyed with three Attendants. Now we leave him, and ſpeak of K. Pepin, who by this time is ſeated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant Orſon was highly eſteemed, inſomuch that he had even all the command of the

kings

kingdom delivered unto him. If ought was to be brought before the King, Orson was the Man to be sued unto.

This Greatness of Orson fretted Haufray and Henry (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, insomuch that they plotted means how to take away his life, saying, it was much to their indignity, that Orson should be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, says the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow. Ay, but (said Haufray) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our elder Sister, to wit, Florence and Garnier, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on foot again, they are fit Members to execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: Now either of these may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to Orsons charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Person: If this can be effected, Orson will surely be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands. In this it is necessary to use secresie.

Upon this resolution, they sent for these two Instruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treason, and being come, Haufray said unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and raise you to Honour; which thing we chose rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us, and therefore we respect you before others. Thus it is, you know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever advanced Strangers, and left us slightly regarded: these things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers, descended from our Uncle, determined to put our doting Father to death, and so we may share the Land into our own Government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, & I think you, Garnier, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your self behind some Arras, and when the King is in Bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, & so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death; and as for little Charles, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a Night, when the King was at Supper, got a knife, and secretly entred

tred into the Kings Chamber, and hid himſelf behind the hangings. When the hour of the Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard and Chamberlain, as the manner was. The King being laid, every man departed, ſave only Orſon, who conferred with the King till he fell aſleep: Orſon ſeeing the King aſleep, without making noiſe, left him, and laid himſelf down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, wherein Garnier aſſayed (having the knife ready) this bloody Enterprize: but being come to the bed-ſide, ready to lift up his Arm to ſtrike the fatal ſtroak, he thought the King would awaken, and ſo trembling for fear, laid him down by the Bed-ſide, and durſt not ſtir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) poſſeſt with fear, he put the knife within the bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orſon all the while ſlept ſoundly, miſdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: Alſo he thought that beſides a River he ſaw two Herons that fought with a Hawk, but the hawk defended her ſelf ſo valiantly, that he had ſlain the two Herons, had they not been aſſiſted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herons likewiſe had ſlain the hawk, but that an Eagle reſcued him.

At this Dream Orſon awaked, and was much aſtonied thereat, ſaying, the Gods preſerve my brother Valentine from Treaſons. By this time the day broke, and Orſon ſoftly ſtole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier ſaw Orſon gone, he alſo followed ſoon after, and took his way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longeth to hear the news: Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done: Lords (ſaid Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in France, & yet I have not hurt the King, for ſtill as I was lifting up my hand to ſtrike, fear and horrour did affright me, that I durſt no more adventure. But I have adviſed me of another Plot, & have of purpoſe left the knife in the Kings bed, and this it is, we will accuſe Orſon of Treaſon, and tell the King, there are four Traytors, whereof Orſon is the principal. Alſo they will make away little Charles; and ſo wholly poſſeſs the Crown. To prove this, we will ſay, that for this purpoſe Orſon hath conveyed a knife into the Kings Bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will ſay, one of us ſtanding at the door, heard all

their

their conference. Garnier, said Haufray, you say well, but if Orson deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the worst, my Brother and I shall find Men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second time for Orson the innocent. The next day the King being at Dinner, attended by Haufray and Henry, who shewed good countenance to Orson: When Garnier saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many Kingly Favours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a Treason which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your Person, I will bewray unto you the practisers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orson first, for he was the principal Traytor, the number in all are four, Orson was the man should kill you in your Bed with a knife; and that your Majesty may the better Credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard Orson say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed; now if it please you either to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said Florent) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words, beheld Orson with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom I have more respected than my own Children! Liege, quoth Orson, be not so lightly carried away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove envy the Author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the knife be found in the Bed, I will crave no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said Myllon Daugler) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that Orson is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: yea but, said the King, if we find a knife in the Bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses, and being there, they found the knife, as Garnier said: Alas, said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own kinsman seeketh my life? but I vow he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valiant Knight, named Simon, came to Orson, which loved him well, and said: Alas Sir, flye and save your life, for the

King

King hath found the knife in his bed, and ſo the King hath vowed your death. Orſon ſaid: I fear nothing. The King entred the Hall where Orſon was guarded with fifty one Knights, and ſo aſſembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment.

Orſon being brought before the King and his Lords, he ſaid unto them: Worthy Lords, ſince my words cannot defend me, I require but the cuſtom of your Country, which is, that when a man ſhall be accuſed of Murther or Treaſon, he might crave a Combate againſt his Enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my ſelf innocent, which I will maintain, if by your Counſels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my ſelf, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaſeth you. Garnier ſaid: Orſon, I think you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reaſon to anſwer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth not damnation, and deſireth honour, ſaith ſo. Upon theſe words the twelve Peers of France cauſed Orſon to be removed out of the place, and alſo the Brothers his adverſaries, while in the mean ſpace the reſt diſputed the queſtion. At laſt it was adjudged that Orſons demand was reaſonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the King; then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederate with him in the Kings death? Lords (quoth he) I will not bewray them for all the wealth in France: Garnier (ſaid the Judge) I give Sentance, that you and your Brother take up Orſons Gage, and fight with him; for ſince you conceal the reſt of theſe Murthers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the Plot. Orſon at this Sentance reſoyced, and caſt his Glove down to theſe two Traytors, ſaying; Lords, here is my Glove that I caſt down to theſe two Traytors, upon this condition, that if my cauſe be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleaſure: Riſe then, ſaid the King, for Judgment is paſt: and for your farther ſecurity, it were good we had ſome Hoſtage: with that Haufray and Henry offered themſelves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother: And for Orſon ſtood Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampſon. So a Months day was aſſigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they ſhould fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampſon, Galeram, & Garvaies, brought forth Orſon; for he

was well beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entred the field with their two Nephews, Royally armed. Garnier and Florent the two Traytors, greatly feared Orson, but Haufray and Henry still comforted them, promising them aid: Being thus in a readiness, the Bishop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the Bishop departed away. After came the Haraulds, and the Serjeants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided 3000 men hard by, and given them command, that as soon as they heard him blow his Horn, they should set forwards towards him. This gladded the Traytors at the heart, but it little availed them, for as soon as the Trumpets signal gave, Orson couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his Horse, ran upon them with fury, and lent Garnier such a stroke, that he ran through both Shield and Armour: Florent on the other side, gave Orson a blow, that he thought he had struck against a Tower: false and accursed Traytor (quoth Orson) thou hast wrongfully accused me, e're this day pass, I shall shew thee where Loyalty doth rest: and with these words, he with his Sword smote Garnier out of his Saddle, and withal pulled off his Helm, and had cut off his head, if his Brother Florent had not rescued him.

Again, Orson made towards Garnier, and striking off his ear, said: Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain. Then began a fresh Combat between these three Champions, Garnier having recovered again his Helm, came upon Orson with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus Orson had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and beside, they relied much upon the rescue of Haufray & Henry, but still Orson followed, and at last so wounded Garnier, that he was fain to forsake his Horse. Being on the ground, he smote at Orson's horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orson being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orson, and gave such a stroak on the helm, that he made him stag-

ger:

ger: Orson vexed hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his horse dead to the earth, and after took off his helm. Florent was so ashamed hereat, that he ran up and down the Field, covering his head with his Shield, and Orson took pleasure in chasing him: Stay Florent (said his Brother) flie not, return, or we shall be vanquished, and herewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon Orson, and with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the stroaks entred his Armour & drew blood; Orson feeling himself wounded, smote off one of Florent's Arms: but yet he gave not over. Orson espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have struck at Garnier, but suddenly withdrawing his arm, hit Florent in such wise, that he fell down dead to the earth, and after said unto Garnier, Traytor, thou shalt after, except thou confess the Treason. Not so, Orson, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death: Haufray and Henry disliked the match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confess the Treason, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said Haufray) I will tell you what may be done, as soon as we perceive Garnier to be overcome, before he confess any thing, we will enter the Field, and make as if we come to cheer up Orson, and will cut off our Nephews head, so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. Garnier (said Orson) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save your life. Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair Promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an ear, I little respect any place of honour; so rather chusing to dye valiantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my Fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orson) and fith death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier, and by strength of arms threw him under him, and pulled off his helm. Haufray seeing there was no way but one, cryed out, Orson slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such justice upon him, as to so foul an Act appertaineth: and Haufray said unto Garnier, Nephew, confess the Fact, & we will be a means unto the King for your pardon. Lord, said Garnier, I did put the knife into the Kings bed; in speaking these words, Haufray drew out his sword, running him thorow; and after said, Lords let this Traytor be hanged

on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved: but Cousin Orson, I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you innocent: and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. News coming to the Lady Hezen, she was glad of Orson's Victory; King Pepin also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle, quoth Orson, the Traytors are vanquished, & Haufray made Garnier to confess the Treason, & so killed him. Nephews, beware of that Haufray, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the Victory: Haufray and Henry speak well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and they had their desert, where we leave them, and return to Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond. Valentine having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find Clerimond. Pacolet being with him, could speak their language, & took up their lodging in a great man's house, but the Host of the house was somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would harken, insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entred your Land without paying of Tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many men: she is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Gryffon, the Head of a Serpent, a great sting within her mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red Scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. (Quoth Valentine) This is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry, and become Christians: the King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir, quoth Valentine, let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great number of long Spikes of Steel, a foot long, as sharp as Needles. This

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armour, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his ſide, took leave of his men, and mounting his Horſe, iſſued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carkeaſs of a Man or of a Beaſt, which if they failed of, none durſt venture out of the City: but having eaten her pray, ſhe would return unto her Den again, without doing any harm. All ſuch Malefactors as any way had deſerved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monſter; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-ſide for to take up Chriſtians, if they happened to come on ſhore, and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the ſight of the Dragon; ſhe ſeing one come towards her, cloſed her Wings moſt fiercely, caſting out of her mouth ſmoak like fire. Then he deſcended from his

horſe, and left his ſharp Ax at his Saddle-bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have ſmitten her, but ſhe lifted up her paw to ſmite Valentine, who ſubtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up

his

his Shield (armed as you have heard with Pikes) & so the Serpent broached her foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing back, and recoiling, Valentine pursued, but when the Serpent saw him approach, she rose on her feet, and thought to have beaten down Valentine, with her fore feet, under her, but fearing the shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said, see yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also, the fair Queen Rozamond fell in Love with Valentine to see him so adventurous.

Now grew the Battle fierce and dangerous between Valentine and the Dragon, but still she fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her play, in the one hand he bare his Shield, and in the other his sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous blow under the ear, but with the blow he broke his Sword. Valentine was in great danger when his sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry, that with her paw she rent his Armor quite through. Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a knife, and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it: Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Ax at his Saddle-bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a blow with his Axe, that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this, she flew at Valentine's head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in Arms, got another helm, and bare it to his Master; Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy ways and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me. But for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine, and delivered the helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her paw, that he felt it through his Armor, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Axe cut off her Nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wing, she flew to the top of a high Rock: Then went Valentine to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentine's Helm, and said: Sir,

I

I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my health faileth: so they took leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine threw his Axe so right, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not flye. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other wing; so that the battle was most violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Axe, but leaving all, he got up into a Tree, to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to flye, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth nothing but stinking vapours. Valentine being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran fiercely at him: Valentine still put the Shield before him, and with his Axe cut her left Thigh, wherewithal she fell to the earth. Valentine still pursued his stroaks, and ran his Axe so far in her Throat, that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; Of all Knights thou art the most hardy, for by thy valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us: With these words they entred the City, and so to the Palace, where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused Valentine's Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King; Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receive Baptism if I overcame the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only. True (quoth the King) and look what I promised, I will perform: and thereupon sent this present Edict throughout the Land, That every one should forsake his Mahomet and be Baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said, Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great hardiness, Wisdom, Strength, and all Beatitudes belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love: O that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection; O, I could love thee beyond humane Reason,

had

hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady I thank you, but you have Wedded a puissant King, and him only ought you to love and honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. Valentine seeing the Queen so eager, replyed, Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till I return from my intended Journey, to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many women that are weary of their Husbands, for the love of others; even so began this Queen to practice; for one Night, as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of Wine was brought unto her, as the Custom was, wherein she had conveyed poyson, and after presented it unto the King: but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying; Lady, look what Drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said that Valentine procured her to do it. I do believe thee, quoth the King, and pardon thee: so they lay together that Night, but she still requested, that Valentine might be put to death: he shall as sure as I live, quoth the King. She hearing the King say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her Maidens, sent to Valentine, to tell him her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: Valentine hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was innocent, said; What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a Traytor, or else lay her shame open to the World, well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self, than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a Ship full of Passengers ready to put off; in amongst the rest goes he and his company; so hoising Sails they departed. On the morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them, Lords, I am most deceived in the Man whom I most trusted, and he whom in heart I held dearest, hath betrayed me, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lawless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poyson me; therefore let us proceed to judge him some shameful death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron said, We have no reason to

proceed

proceed againſt an Offender, without calling him to anſwer. Again, were he never ſo great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was ſent for, but inſtead of Valentine came his Hoſt, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the day from his houſe, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this, ſuddenly ſent forth men to follow and purſue him, but all in vain, for he was paſt their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that the King of Antioch was converted, his wifes Father Brandiffer, a Turk, had ſo great a ſpleen againſt the King for altering his Religion, that he ſent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the King heard this unjuſt demand, he gainſaid him, hereupon Brandiffer came upon him with 100000 Pagans, and beſieged his City. At laſt, within the compaſs of four Months, by treaſon he obtained it, took the King Priſoner, and ſuddenly put him to death, and Crowned himſelf King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempeſt he was forced into the Land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of Greece newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight, with ſome other Company rid forth to ſport themſelves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers Souldiers, and having gotten them, haſted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have ſeized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The Men of Cretophe were very ſorrowful for the loſs of the Emperor and the Green Knight. At laſt they determined to ſend Letters unto Belliſant of what had hapned, and to demand aid againſt theſe Pagans. The Lady receiving theſe Letters, was wondrous ſad, and ſending for their Captains and Men of War, made preparation for a ſpeedy revenge. Alſo ſhe ſent for her ſon Orſon, and craved aid of her Brother King Pepin. Being thus in readineſs, they were ſent to the ſuccour of the Emperor: but Brandiffer had ſcouts abroad to give him notice of all that hapned, and fearing the force of the Greeks, and their Priſoners loſs, they ſtole to the Sea-ſide; ſo taking ſhip, they in a ſhort time arrived in Lize, in which place they took a Caſtle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond, and Galazy, who for her beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings: Brandiffer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he cauſed her

to be kept within this Caſtle, for it was the ſtrongeſt in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by ſuch cunning Art, that but one could paſs at a time: at the end of this bridge two fierce Lyons ſtood to keep the entry into this Caſtle: The Lady Galazy was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor & the Green Knight, with other Chriſtians, which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave we them, and we ſhall ſhew you ſomewhat of the Lady Clerimond, which ſtill remained in Indie.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the year was paſt, feigned her ſelf mad, becauſe ſhe would not wed the King of *Indie*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Indie*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Eſclardy* wedded *Roſamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Eſclardy*, to breathe out Defiance; and of the anſwer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Roſamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* cauſed *Brandiffer* to ſtay with him, and ſent *Valentine* into *Angory* againſt King *Pepin*, and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*.

YOU have heard already of the death of King Trompart, who ſtole away the Lady Clerimond upon Pacolet's horſe: alſo how ſhe got pardon for one whole year before ſhe would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no ſuccour for her relief, which ſhe had ſo long expected, therefore (poor Lady) now is ſhe put to her ſhifts, & to ſave her Maiden-head, ſhe feigned her ſelf very ſick. This news came to the Kings Ear, that the fair Clerimond was extream ſick, at which he grew very ſad, and came to viſit her, at laſt he would have put his hand upon her head, to have held it, but ſhe refuſing, took his arm away, and lift up her head her ſelf, making ſigns that ſhe would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much aſtonied thereat.

After this ſhe rowled her eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in ſuch wiſe, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing leaſt ſhe ſhould prove mad. In this manner ſhe abode a long time, and ſhe did act the matter ſo well, that within fifteen days ſhe ſeemed more like a beaſt than a woman: ſhe made all her Attendants forſake her,

her, for if she caught them, she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while she put her smock uppermost, anon she bedawbed her face with soot, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him, but then she fell into a strange fit of madness: one while she would run against the Chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tryed for her recovery, yet none prevailed: so leave we her in her Chamber, & return to Valentine, who with an ardent desire is roved abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the Lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond, and now were they arrived in Esclardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the Lady on Pacolet's Horse. Being in the City they asked for King Trompart, so they told him he was slain by the King of Indie, & that now at this present, Lucar his Son would revenge his death upon the King of Indie, & to that end he hath newly muttered up his powers, and waged many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake Pacolet, who well understood the language, saying, Of what account is this King Lucar? for the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of Brandiffer, that was late Wife to the King of Antioch, who was slain by Brandiffer, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale Valentine was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said; know ye that what is become of the Lady that King Trompart did bring with him? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host) tell me then where is King Lucar at this present, I would fain serve under him for wages, for my Money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the wars. Marry, said the Host, King Lucar is in Esclardy, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, attending Brandiffer to receive his daughter in Wedlock. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond; and so he departed and came to Esclardy, to serve King Lucar.

Lucar being in the City of Esclardy, thither came Brandiffer with

his daughter, at sight of whom King Lucar was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King Lucar. Valentine was abroad, and entring a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: Valentine still heard the cry, and said unto Pacolet, Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we shall do a Charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted on a Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady, under him. Then Valentine said: My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your Arms, to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy Challenge, and will make thee know, that in an evil hour thou camest hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his Spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the Maiden, saying: Damosel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this Wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth; So it was, that yester-night late he came unto my Fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which, by your Manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath Ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damosel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Esclardy. This slain Pagan had certain attendants, which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying: our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Mur-

Murtherer. At last Valentine and his company were taken, bound, and beaten by the Kings commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King, and said: Alas Sir, do this Kt. no harm, for I vow he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called Valentine of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of Antioch; make much of him, and retain him into your service, for his fellow lives not in the World. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard much talk of his prowess, and I have much desired to have a sight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and said; Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay: yet one thing still remaineth, that you must do for me, which is: That you go into Indie, and defie the King thereof in my Name, telling him: that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me with a cord about his Neck, ready to receive the sentance as by me and my Barons shall be imposed upon him: If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly visit him and his Land with war, and not leave one Town or Village unransaked, nor spare the life of any. Sir (said Valentine) all this I shall gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond seeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into her Chamber, and by one of her Damosels sent for him; when he came to her, he saluted her with great reverence, and she said to him: Knight, you are welcom, for I had a great desire to see you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a desire to see you: for since I saw you, I understand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady you know that for the love of you within Antioch I sustained much danger of life: 'Tis true (said the Lady) & I acknowledge my self guilty; and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my father bestowed me on King Lucar, who is so rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him, he is a perfidious Traitor, and since you entred this Palace, he grew so jealous of you, that he sends you into Indie, trusting you shall never return, for never yet came any back again alive: But I will circumvent him, and set you free from danger. Therefore know this, that not long ago the King of Indie requested me for his Wife, and the truth is, I loved him better than

this

this Traytor, but my Father trolled me in it: now this King of Indie in token of love sent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any save your self; but seeing I perceive the malice of Lucar towards you, I will give you that which shall defend you from Danger, and make you return a Victorious Knight; and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the King of Indie, this shall you do.

After reverence made, & salutations from King Lucar, next greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father hath given me to King Lucar, yet his love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: Tell him also, that when King Lucar bringeth his Host, I will come with him, and then if there be any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (quoth Valentine) for your care, love, and good-will towards me, I humbly thank you, & have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of Indie, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to King Lucar, who allowed him ten Marriners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lyeth between Esclardy and Indie, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the King of Indie. Then Valentine being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship, and backed him, and said unto the Marriners: Abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e're I be dispatched. One of the Marriners said unto the rest: If thou return the Devil must bring thee, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again. Valentine overheard this muttering speech, but made no answer; so he took his way to the City: And when he was near the Palace he alighted off his Horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King Lucar, and thereof said aloud unto him: Art thou not a Servant of King Lucars? Sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such tydings as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring

such

ſuch gladſome news, that your very ſoul will leap to hear it, from the fair Rozamond. Meſſenger, know this, that in the ſpight of King Lucar thou ſhould'ſt have ſuffered death, but for the love & reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou ſhalt receive no injury, if ſo it be, that thou canſt ſhew me ſome Token from her. Yes, ſaid Valentine, that I ſhall ſhew you, and deliver my Meſſage with ſuch applauſe, that I will not ſwerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to King Lucar, you know, who by me ſendeth theſe words, that for the death of his Father, you muſt come and yield to his mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a man guilty of ſo foul a Deed, to receive ſentence of death according to your deſert; if you refuſe it (as a Meſſenger) I breath Defiance againſt you, and tell you that he will ſhortly come and lay waſte your Land, and ranſack your Dominions.

Meſſenger, I underſtand thee, & let light by theſe his bold threats: and for anſwer to this matter, thou ſhalt have letters wherein ſhall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, & alſo how ready I am to receive his Forces that ſhall come to whip my Land: Therefore leave you theſe proud brags, & return to that thou haſt to ſay concerning the fair Lady Rozamond, for I moſt of all deſire to hear from her. Sir (ſaid Valentine) on her behalf I ſalute you as her love, & ſhe ſendeth you word, that ſhe is againſt her will married to King Lucar, whom ſhe never loved. Again, the poor Lady is ſo burdened with love towards you, that if ſhe might have her will, you ſhould ſoon perceive, that none ſhould enjoy her but you, if you be ſo content.

Now to come yet ſomewhat nearer, ſhe told me that ſhe will come hither in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accompliſh your deſire even as you would: By Mahomet, ſays the Indian King, this pleaſeth me extreamly. Sir (ſaid Valentine) whether theſe come from a true heart or no, I cannot tell, but for Token that all is true that I have ſaid, receive here the Ring which you gave unto her, & tho' women prove variable, yet methinks ſhe ſpeaks to you from her inward breaſt. Friend (quoth he) this is the ſame Ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repaſt, while in the mean time I get the letters ready, thou ſhalt take with thee to anſwer this Defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, & was highly feaſted, and he ſtill demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By

this

this time came the King, and delivered unto him the letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in the Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations and hard Atchievements, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great hast to be freed out of Indie, and taking horse he came to the Haven where the Marriners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had not done his Message: Masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, we much marvel thereat.

At these words he took Ship, and on the morrow they were in Esclardy. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he had descended his horse, he went to the Pallace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King Brandiffer, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of King Lucar, against the Indian King: At the return of Valentine they wondred, for the King sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine come before them all, to tell what Tydings of his Message. Valentine began thus to say, he regards not all your Threats a straw; he is fierce and proud, and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This letter being broke open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandiffer understanding his Answer, Swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again but with Victory, or loss of life.

The next morrow they betook them to the Seas, with an Hoast of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City, made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the Riverside he might espy their rich Pavillions, gallantly furnished with Arms, and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. The first (quoth they) is Brandiffers, the second is

Lucars,

Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her Ladies. When the King underſtood that Rozamond was there, his heart leapt for joy, and ſaid, It is no time to ſleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, muſt venture life and goods, or elſe he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Hereupon reſolving, he preſently put his men in Battle array, and ſuddenly iſſued out of the City upon his Enemies, ſo that they were not in a readineſs, for they little thought the Indian had been ſo fierce, but Love made him do it.

When the King ſaw Brandiffer ordering his Men in Battle array, he left his Companies, and with much diligence rode towards the Pavillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was he, ſhe gave all the reſt of her company the ſlip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good-will, got her up behind him, & putting Spurs to his horſe, ſhe ſaid, My love is fixed only on you, & for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated Man ſo much as I did King Lucar; but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewel, and I will keep my ſelf only to thee ſo long as I live. Lady, quoth the Indian, doubt not, for I will not fail you, & here I vow, e're three days paſs, you ſhall be Queen of Indie, and Miſtreſs of all my Lands. Theſe words paſſed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At laſt the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran to the King, ſaying, My Lord, there is evil Tydings, for this day you have loſt the Lady Rozamond, for the King of Indie your utter Enemy, hath ſtollen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly ſend your men of war & follow him, that they may ſave the honour of the Queen. Hold your peace, ſaid Lucar, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil wife, it is well if he can be rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to King Brandiffer, and ſaid, Sir, I have ſmall joy of your Daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a ſtranger, and one that is mine Enemy, leaving me in reproach and ſhame. Faith Son (ſaid Brandiffer) be not diſcontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her away, ſo putting ſpurs to his horſe, rid after him, gathering a great company of men. Amongſt the reſt, Valentine was one, willing to ſhew his fidelity, who ſaid unto Pacolet, now ſhew me by thy Art ſomewhat. Then Pacolet raiſed ſuch a Charm which ſo aſtonied the Indians Eye-ſight, that it ſeemed to him there was nothing before his horſe, but Woods, Buſhes, and great

Rivers. At this he was amazed, that he made the Lady alight; when the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her life with the King, but Valentine was so near to her, that he said unto her; Lady, abide, for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah, Valentine I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am trolled thus, I yield my self as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour; so he led her to King Lucar, and said unto him; Sir, here is the Lady Rozamond your wife, whom the Indian Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for ever as the Battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, & without any further enquiry, mounted on his horse: being on horseback, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled & pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, & forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done; and at this present we have no leasure to enquire further hereof: so he left the Lady, and returned to the Battel. They of Indie returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loss of Rozamond. Alas, Lady, said he, I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was surely Enchanted, and on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, & Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me: Valentine had great praise for getting again the Lady, & she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, & putting up this mischance she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her Will to Execution.

It is a common saying, Women seldom want Deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond, for some four years after, she rode forth of her Tent, pretending to take the Air, but took her way toward the King of Indie, and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did according

to

to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her Horse by the Head, and led her into the City.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the Host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This madded Lucar at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands should be made a great Seneshal: Sir, (said Pacolet) if you please to atchieve dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back? Nay, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called Rabestre, who afterward had the possession of Jerusalem. Lucar was right sorrowful for the loss of his wife, but Brandiffer his Father recomforted him, saying, Son, take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart, but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary tydings, which was, that King Pepin of France, & the Emperor of Greece, was entred his Land, burning and spoiling many places, & were now upon the siege of Angory, in which city his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must presently take a course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such wrack as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son Lucar, and said, Son here is evil tydings befallen, the French are entred my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Knight unto the Indian, to demand your wife, upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will raise your siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the King of Indie, to declare this Message. He being come before him, said, Great King, I am come from King Lucar, who says, that if you will restore his wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replyed: If he will have a wife, he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: Valentine having thus received this answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandiffer to stay with him, sent Valentine and Musgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin

had laid against Angory. And as they were under Sail, Valentine espying a glistering Tower asked what it might be. Then the Mariners described the manner and fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the sight of King Pepins Tents, & Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces, found the number to be great: Then said Valentine, let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said, Let me be the messenger, for I can speak their language. Quoth Murgalant, go thy way; So Pacolet departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some Spy, wherefore they demanded of him, saying, Whither goes this Fellow? he looks as if he were some Spy: 'tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the host of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him with. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right joyous, and said, How fares my Brother Valentine? Then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no tydings of Clerimond, & told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 10000 Pagans, under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these confines, by the command of King Lucar and King Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me; I will send the Pagans short home. Od. Orson do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said Pacolet, I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine, but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you; first stand you still upon your Guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong slap on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good, said Orson, so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprize, and Pacolet was royally entertained for that time: now Pacolet, to the end there should grow no mistrust, gave certain signs to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admiral

miral Burnas, and ſaluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the meſſage which he had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were new arrived 100000, and Murgalant ſends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readineſs, to aſſail the Chriſtians on the other ſide of the City, & Murgalant will aſſail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a man of them eſcape. The Admiral was glad to hear theſe tydings, but he knew not how this ſhould come to paſs; Pacolet took his leave of him, and returned back again to Murgalant with ſalutations from the Admiral: ſo Murgalant gave him great thanks for his meſſage, and Pacolet departed ſecretly to ſpeak with Valentine. When he was come, he ſaid thus unto him; Your Brother Orſon and your Uncle King Pepin, greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, becauſe I would have them well and ready prepared; but Pacolet would not let him know the Plot he had in hand for he durſt not reveal any Treaſon unto Valentine. The night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, ſo Valentine commanded the Watch to be ſtrongly ſet, and would be in the Watch himſelf, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and cauſed him to abide in his Tent. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went amongſt the Pagans, and caſt ſuch a Charm, that they fell aſleep. This opportunity was not let ſlip by King Pepin, for he with his Army entred the Hoſt with 60000 fighting men, and ſet fire amongſt the Tents and Pavillions and killed all that reſiſted: At laſt they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay aſleep in his Bed, and being ſuddenly affrighted, ſkipped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and ſo he fell down dead.

This aſſault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet ſaid unto Valentine, look to ſave your ſelf, for the Chriſtians have killed the watch and entred the Hoaſt. Pacolet (ſaid Valentine) thou haſt made me break my promiſe with Brandiffer, for which I ſhall ſurely dye. Fear not, quoth Pacolet, for he ſhall do no harm. The morrow after Burnas iſſued out of Angory, and ſet upon Pepins Hoaſt, who knew not what had happened. The Battle grew both fierce and long: At laſt the Admiral couched his Spear, and running againſt a Knight of Bay, ſtruck him ſtark dead, after that, with his Sword he ſlew Gyrald of Paris: then came he againſt Robert of Normandy, and lopt

off

off his Leg. At last King Pepin met with him, and couching his Spear, he ran him quite through. The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians following them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls: but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the Sword: within this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battle, and bare with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses Tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-land with the twelve Peers of *France*, and what happened. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father King *Pepin*, and the twelve Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*: And *Haufray*, to further his treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was trappaned in his own Net.

The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain days sail, they arrived where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King Lucar saw Valentine, he said: Knight, welcome home, how fareth & speedeth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst, and taken Pepin and his Nephew Orson? Alas, said Valentine, it is falled out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For King Farin that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men sleep, and so the Christians came and made great havock of our Army. As soon as I got any tydings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle Murgalant, whose body I have here brought. This spectacle fretted Brandiffer at the heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board, & said,

ſaid, ſurely Valentine thou wert the cauſe of this. Mo. Valentine, I return him the lie that ſays ſo, & I will maintain my innocency with my ſword. Nay (ſaid K. Lucar) if he had plotted any treaſon he would never have come again, then Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred. This news gladded the Indian, & hereupon gathering up all his forces, he iſſued forth of the City. The battel being begun, Valentine threw himſelf into the thickeſt, ſo that none durſt ſtand before him. At laſt, meeting the Indian K. he ſmote him off his horſe: Pacolet ſeeing him down, Valentine & he led him unto the tent of King Brandiffer: when tydings came that the Indian K. was taken, he called unto his men, ſaying: Follow hard, & the day is our own: ſo they entred the battel, & drave the Indians to a retreat. When Brandiffer ſaw they withdrew themſelves, they follow'd them to the gates, where fell on both ſides a great ſlaughter. The battel laſted ſo long that it was night, & Brandiffer & Lucar betook them to their Tents, & had that the Indian K. ſhould be brought before them. When K. Lucar ſaw him, he ſaid unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand. The Indian made ſhift to underſtand him, but ſaid never a word.

King Lucar had no ſooner ended his rough ſpeech to the Indian K. but there arrived a Meſſenger, who ſaid unto Brandiffer: I bring you ſad tydings, O King, for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of Angory, & put unto the Sword, Man, Woman, and Child. Theſe are ill tidings indeed (quoth Brandiffer) but ſeeing we have the King of Indie in ſubjection, I hope ſhortly to free my own Countrey. Then he ſaid unto King Lucar, Son, we have the King of Indie in hold, let us make ſhort work with him, & to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done, we will ſpeed unto Angory againſt the French, and take vengeance for theſe wrongs done unto me. Alſo, I have there in a ſtrong Caſtle, the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight Priſoners; who at my coming ſhall ſuffer death. Valentine being preſent, was glad to hear of his Father, ſo by a ſign he acquainted Pacolet, that he ſhould very ſhortly ſtand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that he would find ſome means to releaſe them out of Priſon. Alſo the Indian King looked wiſtlie on Valentine, & ſaid thus to himſelf, Curſed be that hour that thou eſcapedſt my hands, for had I put thee unto death, theſe dangers had never befallen me: Then King Lucar called a ſtrong Guard of Armed Sarazens, and ſaid unto them, keep well this Traitor, and to

mor-

morrow he shall be hanged. So they took him and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, saying; I am half in doubt whether Brandiffer have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have endangered my body as I have done in his service: But now is the time to be revenged. Sir (qd. Pacolet) you have small reason to bear him good will, thereto, if you please) I will find away to free the Indian King, & to deliver Brandiffer into his hands, so may your Uncle Pepin hold Angory still. This (qd. Valentine) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore prosecute thy plot, that so I may help mine Uncle, & deliver my Father: Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after Supper came among those hundred that had the charge of the Indian King. After they had made a fire without the Pavillion, Pacolet cast them all into a dead sleep. Having so done, he went to the Indian King, & said: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am Mahomet, and am come to set thee free. Then go thou to thy Palace, and bear along with thee Brandiffer, who shall not know whether he goeth. Alas, said the Indian to Pacolet, taking him for Mahomet, it should seem that I have deserved well at thy hands, when thou takest so much pains to come down and deliver me from death and mine enemies. King, said Pacolet, trust in me, and believe the Counsel of thy Wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, causing all the Watch to fall into a dead sleep, and so Enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the Indian King into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus set free, gave thanks to Mahomet for his delivery: then Pacolet brought him a Horse, made him mount, and set Brandiffer behind him, and sent them packing for Indie, & so took his leave. At last the Indian came to the gates of his own City & calling the Porter was instantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me how you came by my Father that you have brought him with you, is there a Peace concluded? No (quoth the King) Mahomet delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigor of the Charm, & Brandiffer awaking, began to say, how came I hither? some Devil hath Enchanted me: nay, said the King, Mahomet hath brought us hither, that you may be at Peace with me: I had rather die, therefore let me free, that I may go to my Host again. Not so, for since you are

here,

here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that Guarded the Indian lay still asleep. At the break of day Lucar came to the Pavillion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans saw him, they cry'd for mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Traitors, quoth Lucar, your lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the Streets at Horses tails, & after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed, but Valentine said: friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my Father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in prison. Here Valentine & Pacolet leave the Pagans, & after travel, to hear tydings of the Lady Clerimond.

You have heard before, how King Pepin took Angory, so now will I make plain to you the manner of a Treason toward him by Haufray & Henry, it happened as the King was in his bed in Angory, he had a dream to this effect: he thought that he beheld a Mass-p said, shewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, and three times this Apparition troubled him: the morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, & declared unto them the manner of this Dream, & said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befal, but I think it some Delusion, or else it may be that I should go visit the holy places without the City of Jerusalem. Then spake Orson, I will go with you if you please, & I also qd. Myllon Daugler: after the Twelve Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them thanks, and calling before him Haufray & Henry, he said unto them: Haufray you know you are my natural Son, but yet in such time was you gotten when I had not one foot of Land in France, therefore it is my will that you enjoy this Land of Angory, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray said to Henry, Brother, you understand the K. our Father well, do you not? He will prefer us to strange Lands, as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son Charles, he provideth to leave him King of France, & we must be content with a Foreign part: therefore be ruled by me, & Pepin shall never return into France to establish his heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, & then shall we be King of France, & Emperor of Rome all which I thirst after. Brother (qd. Henry) your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished: Haufray said, I shall tell thee how: Go unto King Brandiffer, and tell him that I must have his daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that King Pepin and the twelve Peers of France, do determine to go

to the Holy Sepulchre & they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but few in train. Brother, this will do well, wherefore make haste to India, there shall you find Lucar and Brandiffer: when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with them: So, so, qd. Haufray, for I shall never be at quiet till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their Father, who had now entred the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. Henry going along with them; and Haufray hath likewise taken his way toward India. So leave we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the Port of Brandiffer and Lucar, treated a truce for a month, between them and the King of Indie: so appointing a day for to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realm of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here maintaining a needless War, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore lift a while to what I shall declare: True it is, that the King of Indie slew your father Trompart for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought and set between the two Kings, Lucar & the Indian: and if she will stay with the Indian let her; if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, & Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called. Rozamond having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the Indian King, and Lucar departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this confession, Haufray came unto the Port of Lucar & Brandiffer, & making haste to their Pavillions, he saluted them unto whom Brandiffer said: What wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said Haufray, that I have to deliver, craveth secresie & attention. So they drew from their attendants, & then Haufray said, Lords, you know that I am Son to Pepin of France, & I also understand that you speaking to Brandiffer have a beautiful daughter, now if it please you to give me your daughter in marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, & all the Peers of France, that have so much damnified you; for know, that in the habit of Pilgrims, they have taken their journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, tenderly accompanied; Quoth Brandiffer, for these tydings I will

give

give thee my Daughter Galazy, but it must be upon condition, that you renounce your Faith; yes, qd. Haufray, that shall I do: When king Brandiffer saw the Treachery of Haufray, first that he would betray his Father, next forsake his Religion, he withdrew himself to advise with Lucar the Caliph, saying to them; You see the Treasons of this man, that demandeth my daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the death of his Father, and ruin of the whole State of France: no, I will not make my peace with such an Homicide, I had rather see my daughters death, than give her to a vile Traytor: After these words, he called to Haufray, and said, Sir, I am glad of your coming & this shall be your task, you shall go to my daughter, & bear this Letter from me, there pass away your time till we have further leasure to resolve on your business. Sir, said Haufray, I am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a 100 men to conduct him on his way: after they were at Sea, within few days they came within the sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was; when they were come to the Gate of the Castle, the Porter called to them: saying, my Lords you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said Haufray, tell the Lady that we shall salute her: the Porter went to the Lady, and said, Lady, without the Gate stand a company of men, that fain would enter, & as I think they are come from your Father. The Lady had her Gentleman Usher, go know what they would, and whence they were, who did as she commanded: as soon as she understood he came from her Father K. Brandiffer, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, so Haufray entred, and thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for he by treason was intrapped. Being entred the Castle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whose Beauty even amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some space of time he saluted the Lady, and said unto her; Fair Soveraign, know that for the great renown that I have heard of your admirable Beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy, and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, lo, here is a letter sent by me from your Father. The Lady taking the letter, read it, when she had read it, she beheld Haufray, saying, Vassal, I have read thy letter, & I find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of France, all this my Father certifieth by his letter unto

me, and commandeth me that I determine what shall be done to thee. Now for that I understand thee to be a most perfidious Traytor, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity nor mercy upon such a wretch as thou art, so he called unto her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a dark Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had happened, said; It is a bitter Marriage to me; instead of having my Person, you shall be Master of my Prison; and so he was convey'd away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight, and when they heard they should have another Fellow-prisoner, the Emperor as soon as he came in, demanded of him from whence he was? Haufray said, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard-son of K. Pepin, why, qd. the Emperor, I am the Emperor of Greece, can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother K. Pepin, and my two sons, with the residue of the Peers of France? Sir, said Haufray, they are in this Country of Angory, and have won the same in Battel. So leave we them in Prison, and return to Valentine and Pacolet.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the Castle, and how *Pacolet* raised up the Devil, to ask his counsel about the taking of the Castle: and how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them: and how he besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was Captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.

After many days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, & viewing it strangely, thought it impregnable; at last Pacolet said, Sir, anon I will tell you more: so he went aside & cast a Figure, & incontinently there appeared unto him a Devil, who said unto him: Leave off your Enterprise, for the Castle is not to be taken but by Treason, so vanished: Suddenly after his departure, there arose a great smoak about the Castle, insomuch that Valentine lost the sight of Pacolet, and was taken into an amazement. This Mist being dispersed, Pacolet came to

to Valentine, and ſaid, let us depart, for there's no way to Conquer this Caſtle, but by Treaſon; ſo they forſook the Caſtle, and went towards Angory: being there, they demanded Tydings of King Pepin, but it was anſwered, he was gone to Jeruſalem on Pilgrimage; ſo Valentine reſolved to ſtay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain, for by the Treaſon of Hauſray, King Pepin was ſurpriſed by Brandiffer, as you ſhall hear.

King Pepin being come to Jeruſalem, by the direction of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Places. During the time of their abode here in Jeruſalem, came Brandiffer, the Indian King, and K. Lucar, having had intelligence by Hauſrey, as before you be heard, accompanied with a great hoaſt of men, and marched ſo far, that they came unto the King of Jury, being come unto him, he did very much marvel at their coming, and after Salutations, demanded the cauſe. Then ſpeak Brandiffer; Sir, know this, that by a Chriſtian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is K. Pepin of France, the reſt are the twelve Peers: if it be ſo, we crave your aid & aſſiſtance, for they are unto us mortal

mortal enemies, & have taken from me my City of Angory, making great spoils within my Territories, wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Law. Your demand is but reasonable (qd. the King of Jury) therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall deride us, and our Religion. Now harken a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriarch about this matter, & if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The King of Jury sent a Messenger unto the Patriarch, to bring them before him: then the Patriarch went unto the Pilgrims, and said, Friends, you must come before the King of Jury. Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his life, but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will do: let us here make Henry our Lord, & I will wait upon him as a Page, bearing his Hat & Staff. Henry being too skilful in treasons, denyed it, saying, here's Orson, & D. Myllon more worthier than I, let them take it upon them: qd. Myllon, so you please, I shall do any thing, then they took their way toward the Pagan that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his Hat & Staff. The Patriarch after he had delivered them to the K. departed, & the K. of Jury said unto them; It is told me you are all French-men come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of France. Sir, said one of the company, the K of France is not here: How? not here (qd. the K. of Jury) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then spake Hen. the Traytor, and said, it is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted treason, & said, Sir I am the K. of France, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, & it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws and Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid & observed therefore you do us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your custom. Say what you will (qd. Jury) but to Spies there is no such priviledges allowed: And now he called forth Brandiffer & Lucar, & said unto them: Lords, these be the Christian Spies, take them & do with them as pleaseth you: These words uttered, the Pilgrims were laid hold on, & then Brandiffer said: Lords let these be conveyed to my strongest castle, & put them into the deepest Dungeon; which done, let us make haste into Angory, & beat out all our enemies, after, into France, to bring

bring that to our ſubjection; all this may be eaſily effected ſith we have all the Peers thereof in captivity, ſo that there is not a man of worth to make reſiſtance. This done, the Indian King required that amongſt all thoſe Priſoners, he might have the little one to make his Dwarf of, (which was K. Pepin) his requeſt was likewiſe granted, ſo he took along with him King Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian K. taking his leave, every one of the Peers lookt pitifully on K. Pepin, but durſt not ſpeak to him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament. How unfortunate am I among them? alas D. Myllon, it grieves me moſt for thee, for thy love towards me hath brought thy ſelf in danger. But for my Son Henry I lay all my curſe on thee, that refuſed to relieve thy Father in caſe of extremity. Farewel Bertha my wife & my young ſon Charles, thy caſe is moſt dangerous, for what will not Traytors attempt againſt thee? By this time is the Indian come home into his own land. When the Lady Rozamond ſaw his approach, ſhe was right glad, & receiv'd him with kindneſs, at laſt ſhe threw her eyes on K. Pepin, who was of ſmall ſtature, & demanded of the K. where he had that little man: Lady, ſaid the King, he was given me at Jeruſalem, being come thither with the King of France and the twelve Peers.

But now let us return to ſpeak ſomewhat of Clerimond, who was in the Court of the Indian K. The Kings manner was to ſend her every meal of the beſt Meat from his own Table, & one night at ſupper time, called Pepin unto him, for to carry her proviſion, ſaying unto him: Go into the great chamber on the other ſide of the Court, there ſhalt thou find a lowſie woman, bear this from me to her; Pepin did as he was commanded; but when he ſaw her in thoſe rags, he ſaid to her: I pity your diſtreſſed eſtate; when the lady heard him ſay ſo, ſhe ſaid: friend pity thy ſelf, let me alone, I am not what I ſeem to be: but tell me, art thou a Chriſtian? Lady, ſaid Pepin, I am, & come from the Realm of France. Then the lady with a ſmiling countenance ſaid: know you then K. Pepin, & his Nephew Valentine? (ſaid Pepin) & his brother Orſon, & his Father the Emperor of Greece. The lady hearing him ſay ſo, began to ſhed tears, & yet ſpake, ſaying: Friend, may I put truſt in you? Ay, ſaid K. Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural father. Then thus know for certainty, that all that I have done, is but counterfeit, for I am a Chriſtian, and the woful love of Valentine, that was given unto him as his wife, but was betrayed and ſto-

len

len away by that Traytor K. Trompart. Then she unfoulded the manner of all these things: when K. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself thus: Ha! what trust is in this world: alas for this poor Lady, alas for Valentine, & yet to see it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlookt for adventure: After he had ended these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I understand whom you are, & sith you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, give me leave also a little to shew you who I am: Here you see me, & in what shape I go clothed, yet know that I am Pepin K. of France, & by disasterous chance am fallen in this servitude. As for Valentine, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, & continueth still without taking any rest: Now I have knowledg of you, if between us we can make those things known to him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady swounded, but Pepin seeing her recovered, left her, & came unto the King, being at supper. So here we rest to talk any more of this matter, and return to say somewhat of Brandiffer & Lucar, who are busied in leading the twelve Peers of France to prison.

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in prison, & with them Haufray & Henry, the only workers of the Treason, came unto his Castle, where he told all the whole enterprize to his daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his hand. Having finished his tale, he put them into a Dungeon, whereas the Emperor, the Green K. & Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled, that he durst not discover his mind to Brandiffer, for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon, after him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth Myllon) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place. Haufray knew after that it was D. Myllon, & demanded of him, by what means he came thither? Nay (qd. Myllon) I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you within the City Angory. Quoth the Traytor, I was taken for a Spy, and for that cause I am hither brought. Now are all these Lords sorrowing in prison. but when Haufray understood that K. Pepin was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only Orson, & he bear it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my brother Valentine and Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the

Ca-

Caſtle was impregnable. Brandiffer having thus made all ſure, called before him his daughter Galazy, & ſaid unto her: I muſt depart to viſite mine Army; being there, I ſhall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will aid me againſt the French, that holdeth the City of Angory, therefore keep well my priſoners, ſo he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King, he ſent his Forces, and came not himſelf, by reaſon that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their Forces, & took their way towards Angory, whither being come, Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for K. Pepin. This much amazed the noble Valentine, when he ſaw the Tents ſo nigh him: at laſt he call'd Pacolet unto him, ſaying: I wonder I hear not of my Uncle Pepin. Fear not (ſaid Pacolet) for e're long we will hear better news; & therewithal departed from Angory, and never reſted till he came to the Camp of K. Lucar, who eſpying him, demanded of him what news, & what was become of his Maſter, who ſo long time he had ſerved? Pacolet anſwered, Sir, he is long ſince dead, & I am come to ſeek a new maſter. (Qu. Lucar) wilt thou ſerve me? Yes (ſaid Pacolet) Thus was he received into his ſervice, but he ill rewarded his new Maſter, for that ſame night by enchantment he caſt Lucar into ſuch a ſleep, that he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, & Lucar being placed before a fire, the enchantment ceaſed, & he awaked. Being awaked, he became ſore aſtoniſhed to ſee himſelf thus betrayed, and at laſt Pacolet ſaid unto him: Maſter, I am at your ſervice, have you any thing to command me? at the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet ſuch a wound that he fell down dead. Valentine ſeeing this accident, was exceeding ſorrowful, & ſaid: ſuch another friend ſhall I never have, falſe traytor (quoth he) thou haſt ſlain him that was all my hope, if thou haſt thou ſhalt ſurely pay for it; then ſaid Lucar, I am glad that traytor is ſlain.

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, & took out of his boſome a pair of writing tables, in which was written the whole manner of his Art. Theſe tables had Pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wiſhing him that if he out-lived him, he ſhould make great account of them: ſo Valentine put them up, & after made uſe of them: here would Valent. have K. Lucar put to death, but being better adviſed he was ſafely kept in priſon; if ſo be that any worthy per-

lonage should be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar should serve for ransome of the other. Thus Valentine caused the body of Pacolet to be honourably interred, whose death was bewailed of all. The next morning there arose an out-cry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone, no man knew how: amongst the rest Brandiffer made great lamentation, till one told him he was in Angory, & how he had slain Pacolet, Brandiffer was glad Pacolet was slain, but sorry for Lucar; at last calling to him a Messenger, he sent to Valentine, to ask him if he would deliver Lucar for K. Pepin, the Emperor, or Orson, or any other of the twelve Peers of France; the messenger departed on his way with these conditions, & coming to the City of Angory, desired to speak with Valentine: After salutations on both parts, he declared his message from K. Brandiffer. Valentine hearing the effect of his message, was much amazed, & said to the messenger, how cometh it to pass, that Brandiffer can make choise of all these valiant men? how became they his prisoners? Mo. the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how that K. Pepin, accompanied with the 12 Peers of France, not long since went to Jerusalem, and having among them one traytor, was delivered into the hands of Brandiffer, & by him taken in Jerusalem, & committed to prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, saith: will you change one prisoner for another? Messenger, I shall give answer to thee anon: so entering into the Hall, he assembled unto him all his council, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our Prisoner Lucar, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle K. Pepin: Now in this cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, & therefore we judge it most meet to release him. Lords, qd. Valentine, you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my mother was wrongfully banished, and so in exile brought me forth, and my Brother in the Forrest of Orleance, where we might both have been devoured of Beasts, if my Uncle K. Pepin had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up unto mans estate: after he made me Kt. and hath bestowed upon me many preferments, therefore I say these things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for K. Lucar; he being thus at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one

voice,

voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto them the Messenger of Brandiffer, and said: Friend, return this answer to thy Master, tell him, that we shall willingly yield the body of K. Lucar, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of K. Pepin: So after due reverence done, the Messenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his Message as Valentine had delivered it to him, whereupon Brandiffer swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

CHAP. XLIX.

How *Myllon Dangler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of prison in lieu of King *Lucar*: And how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the battel from the *Surazens*: and how K. *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *India*'s Marshal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France*, to succour his Wife.

BRandiffer understanding Valentines mind, he suddenly dispatched the messengers to his daughter Galazy, who kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these messengers the K. of France, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her Fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the prison, and commanded him to call forth the K. of France, the Goaler went to the prison, calling for the K. of France, for I'm commanded to set him at liberty. D. Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfie himself, but in doubting manner said, I am here, wherefore do you call me forth: if it be so, I am the first that must suffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my religion, sir (qd. the Goaler) tis no such matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to ransome another Pagan K. which resteth in Captivity amongst the Christians: When Henry heard these words, he repented that he denied to take upon him the person of the K. Thus D. Myllon took his leave with Tears, the Emp. of Greece said unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my son Valentine, and me too, qd. Orson, and tell him in what misery we be, requesting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our lives, Myllon comforted them all he might, and said unto them, Lords, I will not return into France, till I see you at liberty, and so he took his way. Being out of prison, he went to the Lady Galazy, and did unto her reverence, which she kindly accepted, & commended him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the

Messengers that were sent for the K. of France. When they were come before Brandiffer, he said unto him, King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, and to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and in your stead, to send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir, quoth the Duke, all this shall be effected to your Wish, & if he will not deliver K. Lucar according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again according to your mercy. Royally spoke (qd. Brandiffer) I ask no more. So the D. took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards Angory. After few days they arrived where they had free access to the Palace where Valentine lay; being in sight one of another, they kindly embraced. After D. Myllon took Valentine aside, and related unto him the whole course of his Actions, and how K. Pepin was led away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings name, only to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a Benefit had happed to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Sovereign you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse, he caused K. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: K. Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my Friend Pacolet, whom you have slain. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was Lucar delivered, and the D. Myllon restored in his stead: Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops into Battle-array, and with the number of 50000 fighting Men, they issued out of the City upon the enemy. Brandiffer hearing thereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four Kings his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then Valentine resolved to give a new On-set upon the Pagans, and couragiously heartening his men, he set upon that part where was Brandiffer and K. Lucar. In the thickest of this Battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of Massidon) espying a French-man making havock with his sword among the Pagans, he made towards him, & hitting him

him with his Axe, he cleave his head in 2 pieces: having newly done this deed, he was eſpied by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the preſence of Myllon Daugler, he ſmote him dead: for the which act of Valour Myllon Knighted him, and ſaid among them all: That he that won Valour ſhould receive the like reward. In this manner continued the Battel all that day, even till the Sun-ſet. At laſt they drove on each part which ſhould ſound a Retreat firſt, but neither ſide would yield, ſo that they continued all that night, till the next morning, making great Fires to give them light. At break of day the Battel began afreſh in moſt fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themſelves right valiantly, on every ſide they beat down both Horſe & Man. But Valentine was too forward, for he entred ſo far into the enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandiffer. Being there, the Indian Admiral eſpied him, who ran ſo fiercely at him, that he ſlew Valentine's horſe under him, who perceiving himſelf unhors'd, lightly got upon his feet, & with his Sword hewed out a paſſage, but he could not have eſcaped, had not D. Myllon by chance relieved him with a freſh horſe. So Valentine retired himſelf out of the battel to refreſh his tired limbs. When the Indian Marſhal ſaw their ſide had the worſt, he by his policy withdrew his Forces, and in the night-time ſtole out of ſight, ſo that at laſt they took them to their heels, and run away.

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, ſo they determined that Valentine & his Troops ſhould ſet upon the Marſhal, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in ſuch furious manner, that they, upon their firſt adventure, broke their Battel-array. The Marſhal ſeeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him ſuch a rap with his Spear, as both Horſe an Man fell to the Earth. Being on the ground, the Souldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the cuſtody of four valiant Knights.

In this bickering there was many priſoners of account ſurprized and taken, all which Valentine ſent into Angory, to be kept in ſafety. By this time of the day, Brandiffer and Lucar knew that they had the Worſt, but they could not make reſiſtance. At laſt they reſolved to return again into their own Countrys, and renew their Forces afreſh, ſo waping up their Enſigns, they took their flight towards the

Sea-

sea-coast, and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them: of all the pagans multitudes that went into the field, escaped but 100 persons: they being gone the Christians rifling their Tents, found inestimable treasure, and having so done, they returned to Angory, to rest their tired limbs. After the Christians had won the battel, and given burial to the dead, Valentine commanded the prisoners to be brought before him. Among the rest was the Marshal of India, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his Mahometry, the Marshal answered, he would sooner forsake his life: then D. Myllon demanded of what Country he was, he said, I am a Marshal of India, and one whom the K. loveth. Qd. D. Myllon to Valentine, we are made happy in this prisoner for in exchange of him we shall release K. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian K. to be his dwarf, when we were taken prisoners at Jerusalem: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his possession a Christian of low stature: yes, qd. he there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his prisoner, and thither was he brought when the 12 Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshal (qd. Valentine) it is he after whom we inquire, wherefore let him be brought hither & delivered to us, & you shall be set at liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended on my person. At these words the Marshal rejoiced, & sent Letters to the Indian K. The Messenger being dispatcht, he brought Letters to the Indian K. & when he had read them, he was willing to change, for he knew not that it was K. Pepin, & calling him before him, he said: Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be surrendred in your stead, K. Pepin thanked him, & taking his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond & said: Lady, take good heart, for I am set at liberty, & I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon work your release. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, and Pepin departed with the Messenger towards Angory. After some few days they arrived there, where the French-men spared for no cost, to shew their love to K. Pepin. At last Valen. said: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, & by that means procured your liberty. Nephew (said King Pepin) you above all men have most cause to rejoyce, for I bring you the happiest news that ever you heard, and this it is: Fair Clerimond, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her misfortunes, & how she had de-

demeaned her ſelf, to ſhun the love of the Indian K. Valentine hearing this joyful tydings, he uttered theſe words: Dear Lady, thou haſt bought my love at too dear a rate, and curſed I, if I prove falſe, and for trial hereof, I will either purchaſe thy freedom, or loſe mine own life. This ſpeech being ended, the Marſhal was delivered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber, to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets boſom. when he was ſlain, and found every thing ſet down, to fall out juſt as it was now come to paſs, & taking Pen, Ink, and Paper, he wrote down what there he found, and ſewing it unto his Doubler, for fear of loſing, it ſtood him in great ſtead after, for the ſafe-guard of his life, as will hereafter appear.

K. Pepin being reſident in Angory, news was brought him from his Wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his life, and of the twelve Peers of France; becauſe they heard they were taken priſoners by the Pagans at Jeruſalem. This report running for current throughout France, hath cauſed Arthur K. of *Britain*, with a puiſſant hoaſt to enter the kingdom, & to win the Crown of France by violence. Alſo the ſaid Arthur hath committed to exile your young ſon Charles. When K. Pepin heard theſe tydings, he grew wonderfully deſperate, and preſently called together all his Barons, & ſate in counſel what was requiſit to be done in ſuch a plot. At laſt 'twas reſolved, that K. Pepin in perſon ſhould depart into his own land, to ſuppreſs the Uſurper, which he accordingly did, and coming unto Valentine, he began to ſpeak unto the K. Fair Uncle, it were moſt requiſite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to reſcue my Father & the 12 Peers of France. Do ſo (qd. K. Pepin) and if ſo it fall out, that I overcome, I will furniſh you with freſh ſupplies againſt the pagans, that you may with more eaſe compaſs what you intend to do.

CHAP. L.

How *Valentine* under the ſhape of a Phyſician, went into *India*, to ſee & ſpeak with the fair *Clerimond*: And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the K. of *Britain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treaſon. And how *Valentine* took the ſtrong Caſtle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the reſt of the Priſoners: And how the Emperor, *Orſon*, and the Green Kt. kept a ſtrong Garriſon in his Caſtle; and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compaſſed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orſon*, and the Green Kt. left the Caſtle, and came to the ſuccour of *Valentine*

lentine in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid Battle to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father; and how *Mylon Dangler*, returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*.

YOu have heard already that K. Pepin brought news unto Valentine of the Lady Clerimond, which having heard, it would not out of his mind: at last he resolved to pass from Angory to India, accompanied with one Esquire, and in the shape of a Physician, he went to Sea with the Indian Merchants: being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn-holders house, till his Gown and other Habiliments were in a readiness. At his first entrance in this Inn, the Host asked him what he was? he said a Physician, and can cure any manner of disease. The Host believed him, and his Esquire served him as his Apothecary or Clerk. In this manner, lying there about 4 days, he called his Host to him, & desired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his Art, & see who needed help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get something to defray my charge while I lye in your house; but in the mean space rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry (qd. the Host) with all my heart, I accept of your gage: So Valentine deliveres him a rich Mantle, furred quite through with costly Furs, and bad him bring before him that party that should make known his Art. The Host went out, and brought him a ragged Fellow, who had not any thing to hang upon him: Valentine yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new clothed him from head to foot, and said unto him; My Friend, go thy ways into the City, and cry about the same, that there is come a Physician, that can heal all diseases, even mad Men or Women, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from place to place to publish this Doctors skill. At last these tydings came to the K. because he had given out, that he could Recover mad folks to their former senses. So the King hearing good will to the Lady Clerimond, sent for this Physician; who altho' he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his lodging, yet he left them all, and came unto the King, for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the K. he did his obeysance in the name of the great God Jupiter: and the King said unto him; Sir, you be Welcome to my Court, first Dine, and then I shall tell you further the cause of my

sending

sending for you. The K. being set and served, made Valentine also to be richly attended, & dinner being done, said unto him; Sir, I have a beautious Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but she will by no means consent until the term of one year was expired: I granted her to forbear that year, as she demanded, but at the end she was possessed with a Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come within her reach; sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pitiful manner, another while she laugheth, and then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is over-charged with sorrow for her: Now if your skill extend it self to cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my wife Rozamond being dead, I would make her Queen of India. My Lord (qd. Valentine) fear not but she shall do well, but she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits. You shall (qd. the King) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self, lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided Valentine to her window: now go thy way, and leave me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this desperate case, he said; Alas my love, you have bought me dear, as I have you; but by the Gods I swear, I shall never return again to France, till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, & whatsoever came first to hand, she threw at him, which much amazed Valentine: then said Valentine, is this true madness, or but feigned? Dear love (qd. he) tell me true, I am Valentine your love, for whom I have suffered all this damage. Think on the Brazen-head that you gave me, or of my brother Orson that had the string cut in his mouth, or how you were stolen away by the enchanter Adrimain. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a swound for joy; & being again recovered she said: Alas my love, how many dangers we have passed through; you for me, and I for you? And now behold in what balance I have carried my self for thee. Lady, love dearly bought is the sweetest: By this time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the Kings meat for Supper, so that he said unto the Lady: My love, I will go into the Palace, but after supper I will come again, for the King knoweth not but that I am a Physician, I hath sent for me to heal you: the lady bid him go. Being come into the Palace, as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes (qd. Valentine) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The K. was so joyful thereat that he gave unto him a rich Mantle,

all beset with precious stones, & caused him to sit down at his own Table. After supper, Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for she will be extream sick all this night. Well, qd. the K. let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine takes his way towards the chamber of fair Clerimond, with one that carried wood to make his fire withal; which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Esq; then Valentine shut all the doors and windows, and said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his eye aside, he espyed the Horse of wood, and asked her whose it was, who answered, Pacolets: then said Valentine, let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with Pacolets horse mounted him with Clerimond & his Esq; in a Moon-shine night, & with great expedition hasted unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened, & there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, and married her: by this time the K. knew of her escape, and grew frenzy, & said, Ha! thou false enchanter, hast thou de-

ceived

ceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life: & so he caused pursuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of K. Pepin, how he hasted into France to the succour of Bertha his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The K. of Britain not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself with all the Forces he could make & sent out Proclamation, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into France. Hereupon Queen Bertha, with her young son Charles, fled to Lyons to seek succour: at the same time lived a worthy & trusty Earl of Anjoy, who labouring the Queen, and pitying her distress, fortified his Castle against the Britains, to whom the Queen sent 4000 horse to keep the passage. At last the K. of Britain bid the Earl give him passage into France, but he answered, No,: Hereupon there was appointed a band of Souldiers, to lay siege at Angiers, but the Earl kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During the siege was K. Pepin come to Paris, & there was joyfully received: when the Queen understood he was at Paris, she hasted unto him, & when she came before him, in tears, she said: Dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper. Lady (qd. the K.) fear it not. So calling about him his Counsellors, and men of war, he made haste to furnish up his companies, and many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the K. any service. By this time the K. of Britain heard that K. Pepin was come against him with a great Army, which feared him and not without cause, but see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him unto K. Pepin, to save their own estates, and make their peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, and led him perforce before K. Pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off, within the City of Paris. Now they thought that betray'd him; all was well, but the K. afterwards seized all their lands into his hands.

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well that the Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, nor by any thing but by Treason; At last he resolved on a subtile Plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea 12 ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones and Silks, & thus as Merchants, arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a Rich Crown on his head, and said unto his men: be you all privately armed

within the ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle-gate, with the Crown on his head, the Porter said, what bring you hither: friend said Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into Spain, & having many rich commodities, I hear say, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of death; said the Porter, I'l go to my Lady, and bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy, & told his message: the Lady understanding there was such precious jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneschal: Go and receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant & take along with you a sufficient company of Souldiers, least they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded and coming to the ships, they found inestimable Gems; insomuch that they were ravisht therewith: so they taking the value of the tribute due to the lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the ship set upon them, and slew them. Then Valentine said unto them: except we go forward in this enterprise we shall never gain the Castle: wherefore he caused 50 of his men to put on their Sarazens Gowns over their Armours, and so lading themselves with Silks and precious Stones, took thier way to the Castle. The Porter tied up the Lyons, let down the Draw-bridge, & thrusting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insomuch as Valentine led him to the ships: being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, and said: I will make you like one of these if you give me not passage into this Castle, Sir (qd. the Porter) I shall do it: why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: Come, said the Porter, and bring all these men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, & let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the doors to be set open, then winded he his Horn, at which all those in the Ship hasted unto them. Then he entred the chamber of the lady Galazy, who was astonished thereat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your Royal presence: then she bad him welcome, & highly feasted him. Valentine's men having entred the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Kt. save my virginity, Lady, (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and Valentine hasting unto the Dungeon did break it open and cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orson know-

ing

ing his voice, replyed: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither: Valentine ſaid, I am come to ſet you at liberty. At theſe words the Emperor fell into a ſwound, but Orſon ſuddenly recovered him: then they came out of the Dungeon in ragged clothes, and ill coloured faces; but the Chriſtians rebelled for the ſpace of ſeven days in the Caſtle, & Orſon falling in love with Galazy after the death of Fezon, married her, by whom he had a Son, named Orfayr, who after had the Empire of Conſtantinople.

Theſe affairs being thus brought to an end, a Councel was called what was beſt to be done: At laſt they reſolved to leave a Garriſon to reſiſt the enemy: Some ſaid it was fitting that Haufray and Henry ſhould undertake this task: but Haufray replyed, Not we, for we are determined to go into France, to ſerve our Father. Quoth Orſon if you be ſo reſolved, we have ſmall reaſon to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treaſon in you. At theſe words Haufray and Henry were diſpleaſed, but they durſt not ſhew it. At laſt it was reſolved that the Emperor ſhould take his reſt, and his Son Orſon, and the Green Knight ſhould remain there, to defend the Caſtle, whilſt Valentine and the reſt addreſſed themſelves for Angory. Now will we look into the treaſon of Haufray and Henry, who being come into France, lets a plot to take away the life of their Father, little Charles his Son and Bertha the Queen. Being come to Paris, the King Royally feaſted them, and after demanded what news of the Emperor, Valentine, Orſon, & the reſt? (quoth the Traytors) they were all ſlain in a battel at Angory, at which the King waxed wonderful ſad. After this, they poyſoned the King and Queen. Now little Charles was ſtill living, who (as the Gods would have it) hapned under the ſafe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The King & Queen being both treacherouſly poyſoned, the two traytors ſeemed to be exceeding ſorrowful, but D. Myllon being a man of a valiant and couragious ſpirit, forth-with cauſed a counſel to be holden, wherein he would have crowned young Charles King of France, but Haufray & Henry, by bribes ſo corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too young. Hereupon D. Myllon was committed to priſon for ſtanding on the childs part, & Charles held as a kitchin-boy.

A little after it hapned, that Haufray commanded Charles to turn a ſpit, but the boy being full of Majeſty, took up the ſpit, and ſell'd him to the earth. At this, our ſtaps Henry, thinking to ſmite the Child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him ſuch a box on the Ear,

that

that the blud iſſued out at his mouth. Then Hauſray commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a Kt. which took Charles by the hand, & conveyed him to Paris. The Traytors perceiving Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon D. Myllon told his wife thereof, who was ſiſter to Charles, the Lady could not behold the ſame for tears, but vowed that they ſhould dearly pay for theſe treaſons, & forthwith cauſed Letters to be written into Angory unto Valentine, and the 12 Pærs of France. Theſe Letters came firſt into the hands of Valentine, who could not chuſe but weep at this act of villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cauſe: he anſwered K. Pepin and the Queen are dead, and as for Charles, the two accurſed brothers Hauſray and Henry have chaſed him out of his Country, impriſoned D. Myllon, and all that held on young Charles his ſide: theſe are the contents of theſe Letters, and the Lady that ſendeth them, requireth help to apprehend theſe rebels. Theſe ſad tydings put them to their wits end, and lying between two extreams, knew not which way to take, for Brandiffer was daily expected with an Army of many thouſands, at laſt Valentine ſaid: E're to morrow night I will ſet free D. Myllon, or elſe my skill ſhall deceive me: At which they laughed heartily. Valentine departed, and with Pacolet's horſe he ſuddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the Gates, and releaſed all the priſoners, and being ſhewed the chamber where D. Myllon was, he entred the ſame, who being faſt aſleep, he awaked him, & ſaid Sir, I am Valentine, which am come to ſet you free. Then he mounted him on his Horſe, & bad him not ſpeak, for he was to paſs through the Air. The D. prayed him to paſs by the Caſtle of Angier, that he might but ſee his wife, which he did, and being come to the lady thereof, who preſently ran & killed him, demanding of him whither he went? Lady (qd. he) I go to fight againſt the Infidels, to bring home the 12 Pærs of France, with an Army to overthrow Hauſray & Henry, & to ſuccour Charles. Having refreſhed themſelves with meat, they ſet forth towards Hunga. being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much aſtonied at Valentine's art, greatly deſiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man: Now was Brandif. with his Hoſt, come within a mile of Angory & there planted his ſiege. The Citizens hearing hereof, ſhut up their gates, drew up their bridges, & after got on the walls, lying a month together without making reſiſtance. The Emperor hearing that Bran. had bigirt Angory with ſo huge an army, reſolv'd to leave the ſtrong

Caſtle

Calls to the Guard of a Kt. So the Emperor Orſon, & the green Kt. took shiping, accompanied with 1000 Souldiers: being at Sea, they ſaw a great fleet of ships coming to them & at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the succour of Brandif. the christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was shown on both sides, but they knew not whither the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian Kt. tumbled him over ship-board: Orſ. standing by him, grewangry: & taking his Ax, struck him stark dead. This dad discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves all that night, they having lost 15 tall ships & 400 men. Then the Emperor said: Lords, let us arm our selves with such weapons as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this enterprize was fatal, for the Emperor was slain by his own son Valentine who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoise sail again, and at last arrived in Angory.

After a months siege, Valentine sent a defiance to Brandiffer, offering him battel. The Christians divided their battel in ten Squadrons, whereof D. Myllon was their General. The second Sampſon of Orleance. The third, Earl of Vandſom. The fourth, Earl of Campagne. The fifth, Quintine of Norm. The sixth, the D. of Burgoyn. The seventh the Earl of Dampmartin. The eighth, the Earl of Aſserve. The ninth, the Marshal of Conſtantinople The tenth was Valentine, who added courage to all the rest. Being in order, they issued out of the City, to assail Brandiffer, who had divided his army in 15 Squadrons, & the Squadron which had the least commander, was a K. At the joyning of these battels, a certain Pagan, that never before had been in wars, couched his Spear in his rest, and would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking to coll his pride, ran against him, & struck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell-mell, wherein the christians behaved themselves valiantly, & the Indian King entering the Battel, made very much slaughter: but Valentine missing him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he set him besides his horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, & ruled the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain with 3000 men, & continued the battel more hotter than before. By this time K. Lucar lighted on the Indian K. & lent him succour: now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant Kts. arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately

lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & ſuffered much miſery) entred the field. The one of them brought into France, the daughter of a rich admiral, called Claradine, & cauſed her to be baptized, the name of the one was Reynord of Province, the other Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans were much diſcomfited, for Myllon of Dyon at his firſt encounter, ſmote K. Lucar ſtark dead, & at the next another K. called Rubres, which accident much amazed Brandiffer. At another part of the battel ruſhed in Reynord, & ſlew many of them. Valentine wondred at theſe two Kts. of Chivalry, & coming towards them, ſaid, Lords, you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance come you hither? Friend (qd. Reynord) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of theſe Wars, we thought it requiſite to defend you againſt the Pagans. I am called Reynord, Lord of Province, & my companion is called Myllon of Dyon. Quoth Valentine, once again heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, & all the Peers of France: ſo they joyntly ruſhed a freſh into the battel. All this while the Indian K. had a ſpleen at Valentine, for his laſt diſgrace, & finding him out, accompanied only with 3 other Kings, they ſo encountered Valentine, that they did ſmite him & his horſe to the ground: being down, he quickly recovered, & drawing his ſword, defended himſelf therewith, but with much danger. At laſt D. Myllon, Sampſon, & Gervis, came unto his ſuccour, getting a freſh horſe for him. Valen. being mounted, made his courſe againſt the Indian K. again, & ſtriking him down, took away his ſhield, which he kept, (for he had loſt his own.) This ended, tydings came, that a great fleet of Sarazens was coming near unto the Haven. Hereupon Valentine ſaid, Lords, let us preſently go ſtrengthen the paſſages. So Valentine & the D. Myllon of Dyon went to the Haven, but theſe were all friends and Chriſtians, amongſt whom, was his Father the Emperor of Greece, of whom you ſhall hear more at large.

The Emperor having landed his men, Val. ſaluted him with his ſpear in his reſt: the Emperor (who bare the ſhield of a Sarazen unknown) encountred with his ſon. At laſt Valen. ran his ſpear quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead, he ſaid montjoy vive Greece. Orſon ſeeing his father dead, did weep, & ſaid to Val. brother, there is ſmall conqueſt in this, for you have ſlain your father. When he heard him ſay ſo, he fell in an extaſie from his horſe. To this lamentation of the 2 brethers, came Rey. of Prov. & Myl. of Dyon to comfort them, ſaying, Kts. have

patience

patience, for tears cannot recal him; Alas, said Val. what have I done? it were happy for me, if death would take me from this world, I have committed this fact, detestable both to God & men: O what will become of me? my life have I passed away in troubles, torments and cares, & now to add more sorrow to my days, I have shed the blood of my dear father. Brother Ors. take my sword & cut off my head, that the earth may not bear so bloody a butcher. Brother, said Ors. depart not thus, but repent, & no doubt but you shall be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he ran through-out the Pagan Troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the battel to encrease, & B. Christo. slew the Christians on every side. At last Valen. meeting him, gave him such a Carvalada, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel the D. Myllon of Dyon, & Reynord of Province, rushed so fierce into the battel of the enemy that they were taken prisoners: yet notwithstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their liberties once again, & made Charles K. of France, with honour and joy, to the destruction of Haufray & Henry, the two notable Traitors: yet was not this fierce, long, and tedious battel ended, for they stood it out manfully on either side. Valen. being careless of life at last met with Brandif. who encountred each other so fiercely that both fell to the earth: but Valentine suddenly recovering himself, took the K. such a blow, that he clave his head. K. Brumant seing his brother slain, went out of the field with the Admiral of Cordes. & K. Iosiph, who caused a retreat to be sounded: The Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the sea, & drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: next morning in burying the dead there was great lamentation for the Emperor of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory, D. Myllon took his leave of Valentine, to return into France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither, Friend (said Valentine) I would I had never known the art, for it hath brought nothing but shame and vexation on me & him an untimely death that taught it me: so that D. Myllon departed. Valentine and Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departing,

they Crowned the Queen Kt. S. of Angory. After leave taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him, and said, Love, I know you are with child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife; but before I go, I will make certain lands over unto you for your maintenance, that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denyed, but said, she would go to sea with him; and after confine me to some Religious house, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (qd. Orson) & so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they send word to the Empress of their Father's death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City also: making great triumphs throughout the same. The Empress being on a certain time at dinner, said unto her Sons: it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperor. Orson replyed, it appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholden to you; you nothing to me: therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should jointly govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity; for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, & said thus unto her: understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for that fact, & I am therefore minded to go on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and my Brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, & then give them this Letter: all which the Lady must consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP. LI.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the Green Knight: And how *Galeran* delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made; how *Bellysant* and *Clerimond* came to know of King *Hugons* Treason, and how *Galeran* lost his head, and how *Orson* and the Green Knight were set free.

Then Valentine said lady, cease your tears, & give me your Wedding Ring: She having done so, he brake it in two pieces, keeping the one half, & giving her the other: saying, my love, keep thy half, & what

whatſoever you hear believe nothing, till you ſee this other half, which I poſſeſs. At theſe words he embraced her, & wept bitterly, ſo departed

only one Page with him. Having long travelled, at laſt he came to Rome, there coming into the preſence of a Hermet, he confeſſed the death of his father; the Hermet ſeeing him ſo Penitent, enjoined him penance. Firſt change thy habit, & go barely cloathed, & 7 years lye under the ſtairs of thy Palace, without ſpeaking any words thou ſhalt neither eat nor drink, but of the ſcraps that come from thine own table. do this, & fear not thy ſins. Sir, ſaid Valentine, all this I will do: ſo after he had dined, he departed, without ſpeaking to his ſervent after this, Valentine entred into a Wood, feeding upon Roots, and he continued there ſo long, that he was forgotten amongſt men.

Orſ having now read the Letter that Clerimond delibered him, wept bitterly, inſomuch as the lady ſaid unto him: Brother, ceaſe your lament. Alas, ſaid Orſon, I have great cauſe, for this letter ſheweth, that my brother will never return. Herein the lady ſwounded, & Reco-

bering her self, she said, why hath my love bid his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again. News was spread through the City, that Valentine would never Return: Clerimond wailed, Bellysant complained, & Ors. sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fez. hearing that Orson had got another lady with child, she died with grief. Being dead, Ors. made a years solemnity of her Funeral, & after married Galazy. of whom you have heard before.

Now I will shew you how Valen. came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brothers Palace about supper-time, & those that waited at the table, beat him away: Ors. seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing all poor men should be relieved for my brother Valentine's sake, that so we may hear tydings of him. After this, they brought him meat & wine, but he slipping a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders: night being come, the servitors asked Ors. if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace. Ay (qd: Ors.) for it may be for some vow which he hath made. Thus abode Val. & made his bed under the stairs, of straw. On the morrow Ors. passing by, gave him mony, after came his Mother, and his Wife Clerimond & they gave him mony, saying: How can you endure thus naked, without cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his mony to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour: Next day at Dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, & made signs for the Alms basket: Orson to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said Orson, surely this is some vow he hath made unto the Gods. Thus did Valentine remain within the Palace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In these days there was a K. of Hungaria named Hugon, who heard that Valen. had given over the Empire of Greece unto his Brother Orson: this Hugon came to Constantino. & was honourably received. After his arrival, he came to the Lady Clerimond, & said I am K. of Hunga. & have no wife, & for that purpose I am come hither to crave your love, I know that Valen. is dead, or else that he will never return, dear L. grant me thy love, & thou shalt be M. of Hunga. Sir, (qd. the lady) I thank you for your kingly proffer, but to be your wife

I

I cannot; for ſure my Valen. liveth, & for 7 years I will every day expect his return: beſides, when I make choice of a husband, my Brother Orſ. & the Green Kt. muſt know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orſon, & demanded of him if he heard any news from his brother? Great K. (qd. Orſ.) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, which his wife delivered me, & certified me that he is gon to exile, & beareth about him half the Ring he was married withal, the other half he left with her, charging her that ſhe believe nothing of him, till ſhe ſee the other half which he poſſeſſed. The gods be his good ſpeed qd. Hugon, for he was a worthy Kt. But one thing qd. Hugon, have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to Jeruſalem, to viſit the holy ſhrine, ſo you would bear me company. With all my heart, qd. Orſ. but let us go to Angory, & take with us the green Kt. who is K. thereof. It ſhall be ſo, qd. Hugon. So Orſ. taking leave of his Mother, & his wife Galazy, came to Angory, & was received with great joy. Having feaſted there, they took their way to Jeruſalem. Being come into the City, while they were beholding divers Monuments, Hugon ſtole away from them to the K. of Jury, & ſaid: I have a meſſage to deliver worthy your attention. There is newly arrived here 2 worthy Kts. that are your greateſt Enemies for they ſlew K. Brandi. K. Lucar, & your brother K. of India. When Rabeſtre heard all that he could ſay, he was ſorry for the death of his brother, & ſaid to Hugon: Can you deliver me theſe two Kts? yea, ſaid the Traytor, ſo you will give me their gold ſeals, Sir, qd. he, them & much more will I give you. Then hearken, ſend to the Patriarchs houſe, & he will tell you where they are. The K. ſoon ſent out 800 armed men, & found them at dinner, then they took them and brought them unto the K. Falſe enemies, qd. the K. to our lives and Religion, my heart even leapeth for joy that I have got you, tell me what is your names? my name is Orſ. & this is the Green Kt. you are the men I look for, & there is another called Val. had I him alſo, I would uſe you all alike, then he cauſed their ſeals to be taken away, and given to Hugon, & they to be caſt in a dungeon, & be fed only with bread & water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought he had been ſlain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City called Galeran, & began thus to ſalute him; Galeran, my deſire is to employ you & truſt in a matter of import, & I will reward you ſufficiently. Uncle (qd.

Gal.

Out.) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair Clermond. True, said Hugon, therefore let us write a letter in the name of Orf. & we will seal it with his seal, & the Letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the power of the gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice Renowned Soveraign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my sister *Clarimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience; Ladies, know that I have found my brother *Valentine* on his death-bed at *Jerusalem*, & a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute *Clarimond* in his name, and command her, that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband: the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Hugon wrote another Letter, saying:

Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my brother *Valentine*, but now we wish you, for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first to accomplish the desire of the dead; secondly, to encrease your honour, we advise you to match with *Hugon* King of *Hungary*, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for farther authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own seals. Again know, that we cannot yet return, for great Wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the gods.

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Gal. to bear to Constant. himself following after: by this means thinking to get the Lady Galeran, being in Constantinop. delivered his Letters to the Lady Bellysant, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward she called one to read them, & Valen. lying in the Hall, heard the Contents thereof: being read, the ladys grew exceeding sorrowful for the death of Valen. but especially the lady Clerimond, pitifully lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst women am I? Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to see thy body laid up safe in the earth? unkind Brother, & the Giant Kr. why are you two such enemies, as to wish me to marriage. so soon after Valentines death, seeing I have lost such a noble, magnanimous, & loving Kn. the mirror of Chivalry, the rose of honour, the trample of courtesie, & the patron of truth? Death, hast thou not one dart left to shoot at, but his poor breast? for seeing my life is nothing but sorrow, I will

will never have other husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days. All this did Valentine behold, which he pitied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence. Bellysant seeing Clerimond thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, & I sorrow for him at my heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back, therewith I pass it over, & rather think on what your Mother, and my Son Orson doth advise you unto. God Mother (qd. the Lady) say no more, for I shall never marry, & therewith went weeping to her Chamber, & Valentine he lay under the stairs, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four days after, K. Hugon came to Constantinople, and was received with great honour, but Clerimond shewed him no favour. Being there, he said unto the Empress: You understand of the death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: but it is agreed upon that I shall marry the Lady. Sir, (qd. Clerimond) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this treason Valentine heard. But in the end, the matter was so urged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much encreased his joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him thus: Valentine get thee out of the City, and without the gates is a Pilgrim, put on his Weeds, having them on, get thee to thy Palace, & there before all comers reveal the treason practised against thy love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known. Valentine coming to the court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the traytor Hugon, even he that uttered such reproachful Words against Clerimond: Now Valentine came to Bellysant saying: Lady, I beseech you shew me the wife of Valentine: whereat Hugon blushing, replyed: Pilgrim, get thee gone into the Kitchin, for this is no place for thee. Sir, said Valentine, I would fain do a message to her: wouldst thou? said the Lady, I am she that thou desirest to see: then thus, I have lately seen your Love Valentine, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three days he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my love is dead. Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said: Hugon hearing these Words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his horse, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale, & offered to seek him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies, par-

me

me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the Town, with whom I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: Yet Clerimond would gratifie him for his News, giving him money, which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after it was demanded, what was become of K. Hugon? a Damsel standing by, said, I saw him now take horse, but where he is I know not.

Upon these words Galeran came in, and they asked him what was become of his Uncle Hugon? who making no reply, Sellysant grew inraged, and said, You shall not escape till you have revealed the treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said, Lady have mercy on me, and I shall tell you all. Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of Treason, and has sold to the Pagans, the Emperor Orson, and the Green Kt. Which tale soon daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leading the habit of a Pilgrim returned again to the Palace. Clerimond espying him said, Poor man! Where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said I will not marry. Valentine replied not at all, but left her, yet she not so contented at his dejection, caused a costly Couch to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused.

K. Jury having Orson and the Green Kt. in hold, caused them to be brought before him, & said unto them: Lords, you see you are at my mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with Life, except you resign back unto me the City of Angory. Orson replied, We will never consent hereunto, except thou give K. Hugon unto us. The K. said unto them, Speak not of him, for he is the traytor that delivered you into my hands, & he hath your seals. Orson & the Green Knight marvelled much thereat, & swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these prisoners were content to yeild to the King's command, and so returned to Constantinople: Being come home, Clerimond told him, that she had heard tidings of Valentine, which rejoyced Orson, who lying with his Wife that night, got a Son called Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after Orson rais'd an host of men to go for Angory, which when Hugon heard, he offered him the same City, & 4 Horse-load of Gold, & if any there durst call him Traytor (Orson excepted) he would fight with him; the Green Kt. accepted his challenge, so arming themselves, the Green Kt. came first into the List. All things set in order, they encountred each other with their Spears, next with their Swords,

at

at laſt the Græn Kt. gave Hugon ſuch a ſtroak on his Helm, that he cut part of his head even off at his ſhoulders, ſo that he fell into a ſwound. Thus was the Græn Kt. Conquerour. Hugon reviving again, deſired a Confeſſor, & unfolding the treaſon, dyed in the place. Orſon nevertheleſs cauſed his Body to be ſumptuouſly interred. At laſt Hugon's treaſon being blown abroad, they tendered the City to the Emperor Orſon. This being ended, they returned into Conſtantinople. But Clerimond marvelled ſhe heard not of Valentine.

CHAP. LII.

How at the end of ſeven years, *Valentine* dyed in the Pallace of *Conſtantinople*: and how *Orſon* turned hermet.

AT the end of 7 years, Valentine fell into a mortal diſeaſe, wherof he dyed. Before his death an Angel appeared to him, ſaying: Valentine, thy glaſs is run, for within four hours thou ſhalt dye: whereat he greatly rejoyced, making ſigns for pen, ink, and paper, when he had it, he wrote that it was himſelf that appeared like a Pilgrim, & diſcovered the treaſon. After putting to it his name, he cloſed up the paper, putting in the other half of the ring that he had kept: ſhortly after he laid him down & dyed. When Orſon ſaw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The Poor man being dead, held a letter in his hand, which Orſon would have taken out, but could not, then came Clerimond, & as ſoon as ſhe laid hold thereon, the hand opened it ſelf. Clerimond breaking up the Letter, & knowing the half Ring, ſaid, Lords, we ſhall ſhortly hear news of Valentine: So a Secretary was called to read it, at the reading hereof, great lamentation was made, but eſpecially by Clerimond, who falling on the dead body, ſaid: Alas I have loſt all my Joy, comfort & hopes, for that my love ſhould dye ſo near my Perſon, & I know not of it. Now great preparations was made for his Funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Conſtantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a ſingle life. Thus having ſhewn the death of Valentine, & what became of Clerimond: Let us return to Orſon who ruled the Empire of Conſtantinople ſeven years and by his ſecond Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Morant, who afterward was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired, Galazy dyed for whom Orſon was exceeding ſorrowful, & in the end betook him to the Woods, feeding on bread & roots. It happened one night that he ſaw a viſion, it ſeemed to him more glorious than his tongue could utter. After this viſion he awaked, & being aſtonied hereat, with tears he came to the Græn Kt. & ſaid: Sir, I ſee the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to reſign my eſtate & children unto you: ſee them well educated, that they may be fit to govern ſuch a People, for I will ſpend the

reſt of my days in ſolitary contemplation: When the Green Kt. had heard theſe words he wept bitterly. But Orion recomforted him, ſaying: Weep not, but pray for me as I for you, that you may accompliſh that which I put you in truſt withal. So taking his way towards a wood, he there ſpent the remainer of his days: the green Kt. after ſo governed his children, that they carefully ſpent their time on earth, & followed their father to his grave.

FINIS.

THE TABLE.

How King *Pepin* baniſhed Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Siſter *Belliſant* in marriage to *Alexander*, the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. *chap.* 1.

How the Arch-prieſt of *Conſtantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Maſter, in making love to the Empreſs, and what evil followed thereupon. *chap.* 2.

How the Arch-prieſt having received this repulſe at the hands of *Belliſant*, to ſave his own honour, practiſed Treaſon againſt the innocent Lady. *chap.* 3.

How the Arch-prieſt put on him the habit of a Knight at arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empreſs *Belliſant*, who was lately baniſhed. *chap.* 4.

How *Belliſant*, in her baniſhment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whoſe names were *Valentine* and *Orſon*, and how ſhe loſt them. *chap.* 5.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the L. *Belliſants* children. *c.* 6.

How by the counſel of the Arch-prieſt, new Cuſtoms and Taxations were raiſed through the City of *Conſtantinople*, and how the Treaſon came to light. *chap.* 7.

How the Emperor by the counſel of his Nobility, ſent for King *Pepin* to ſee the combat fought between the Arch-prieſt, and the Merchant. *chap.* 8.

How the Merchant and the High-prieſt encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of *Belliſant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. *chap.* 9.

How

How King *Pepin* returned from *Conſtantinople* into *France*, and after ſailed to *Rome*, to fight againſt the Sarazens that had ſurprized that City. *chap.* 10.

How King *Pepin* beſieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* juſted with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and ſlew him, whereby the City was won again from the Sarazens. *chap.* 11.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did ſhew towards *Valentine*. *chap.* 12.

How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orſon* in the Forreſt of *Orleance*. *chap.* 13.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orſon* the wild-man, went from the Forreſt of *Orleance*, whereas K. *Pepin* was reſident. *chap.* 14.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* took counſel together, to murther *Valentine* in the chamber of *Eglantine*. *chap.* 15.

How Duke *Savary* ſent unto K. *Pepin* for aid againſt the *Green Kt.* who would have his daughter in marriage againſt his will. *c.* 16.

How divers *Knights* arrived at *Aquitain*, at a ſolemn Juſt there holden, to bear away the Love of the beautious L. *Fezon*. *ch.* 17.

How *Haufray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a troop of their confederates, lay in ambuſh to take away the life of *Valentine*. *ch.* 18.

How *Orſon* and *Grygar* fought together, how *Orſon* returned victory, and cauſed *Grygar* to confeſs the Treaſon, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. *ch.* 19.

How *Grygar* being vanquiſhed by *Orſon*, confeſſed his Treaſon to King *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof againſt the worthy *Valentine*. *ch.* 20.

How *Orſon* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: alſo, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him. *ch.* 21.

How *Valentine* took good advice, and ſent *Orſon* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orſon* overcame him. *ch.* 22.

Orſon having conquered the Green Kt. *Valentine* cauſed him to be Chriſtened and ſending him to K. *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight. *ch.* 23.

How the ſame night that *Orſon* was made ſure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge ſhe gave unto him. *ch.* 24.

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orſon* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*; and how the Green Knight ſubmitted himſelf, according to his promiſe made unto *Valentine*. *ch.* 25.

How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to hear theſe tydings, and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured *Conſtantinople*. *ch.*26.

How the Green Knight Juſted againſt the two Sarazens, and having ſlain one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his hoſt were lodged within *Conſtantinople*. *ch.* 27.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* arrived at the ſtrong Caſtle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents. *ch.* 28.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Caſtle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*, and how he Juſted for the enterance, and overcame the Seneſhal. *ch.*29.

How *Valentine* ſhewed *Clerimond* her Brother's Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he queſtioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was deſcended. *ch.* 30.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that paſt between his Siſter and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. *ch.* 31.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditions journey into *Portugal*, to ſee the Lady *Belliſant*, *Valentines* Mother, and of his returning back, and the news that he brought. *ch.* 32.

How *Valentine* & *Orſon* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to priſon, with their woful lamentation. *ch.* 33.

How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. *ch.* 34.

How, by *Art*, *Pacolet* ſet free *Valentine* and *Orſon*, from the priſon of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. *ch.* 35.

How *Valentine* and *Orſon* eſcaped the caſtle of *Ferragus*, and ſailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. *ch.* 36.

How King *Ferragus* aſſembled all his Men of War to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his Siſter *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*. *ch.* 37.

How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken priſoner in the battel by *Ferragus*,

ragus, & how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. ch. 38.
How *Orson* tryed the constancy of the lady *Fezon*, before he Married her. ch. 39.
How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthned his Forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*. ch. 40.
Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son before his farewel into *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle. ch. 41.
How *Valentine* and the Green Kt. were taken Prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* & his men. ch. 42.
How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, deliver'd *Val.* & the Green-Kt. out of the bondage of the Souldan, & how *Pac.* cozened the Souldan when he had him upon his horse, & instead of carrying him to *Portugal*, brought him to *Constant.* where he was hanged. ch. 43.
How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*, and how the King of *Indie* caused King *Trompart*'s head to be struck off: And how he would have married with *Clerimond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a Woman: And how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* and the Duke went with their Army to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperor: & how *Orson* led along with him his mother: and how all the *Pagans* were slain before *Constant.* and how the Emperor rereived his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellisant* with joy. ch. 44
How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon, & how *Valentine* after the conquest, of the Dragon, caused the K. of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rozamond*, &c. ch. 45.
How *Clerimond* after the year was past, , feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Indie*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the

the King of *Indie*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy* wedded *Rosamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out defience; and of the answer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Rosamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*, &c. *ch.* 46.

How *Valentine* returned back to *Indie*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Morgalant*, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Host, and went to *Angory*, and of the Vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-Land with the 12 Peers of *France*, and what hapned. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father, King *Pepin*, and the 12 Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas*, made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*. And *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was intrapped in his own net *ch.* 47.

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the Castle, & how *Pac.* rais'd up the Devil, to ask him council about the taking of the Castle, & how *Brandi.* brought the 12 Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them. And how he besieged the city of *Angory*, and how *Bran.* having knowledge that *Lu.* was captive in *Angory*, made means to *Val.* to deliver him upon sufficient ransom. *ch.* 48.

How *Mylion Dan ler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King *Lucar*: and how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Mylion* issued out of the city of *Angory*, and won the battel from the Sarazen: and how K. *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marshal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to succour his wife. *ch.* 49

How *Valentine*, under the shape of a Physician, went into *Indie* to see and speak with the fair *Clarimond*: and how *Valentine* rode away with her: and how the K. of Brittain, was given to K. *Pepin* by Treason: and how *Valentine* took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners: and how the Emperor, *Orson* and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison

Books Sold by E. Tracy, *at the* Three Bibles *on* London-Bridge.

THE Famous Hiſtory of *The Deſtruction of* Troy: In Three Parts. *Quarto.*

The Honour of Chivalry: or, The Famous and Delectable Hiſtory of *Don Bellianis* of *Greece.* Quarto.

The Hiſtory of *Amadis de Gaul.* Quarto.

The Famous Hiſtory of *Montelion.* Quarto.

The Excellent Hiſtory of *Paladine* of *England.* Quarto.

The Hiſtory of *Jack* of *Newbury.* Quarto.

" *you may alſo be furniſhed with all ſorts of Hiſtories, and other fit for the uſe and practice of all Perſons in* England, Scotland.